Bonfiglioli
Vectron

ACTIVE

Operating Instructions
Frequency Inverter 230 V / 400 V
0.55 kW ... 132.0 kW

Bonfiglioli
power, control and green solutions

General Information about the Documentation

The present documentation refers to the frequency inverters ACT 201 and ACT 401 series. With their factory settings, both series of devices are suited for a wide range of applications. The modular hardware and software structure enables customer-specific adaptation of the frequency inverters. Applications with high functionality and dynamics requirements can be realized easily.

For better clarity, the documentation is structured according to the customer-specific requirements made on the frequency inverter.

Quick Start Guide
The Quick Start Guide describes the basic steps required for mechanical and electrical installation of the frequency inverter. The guided commissioning supports you in the selection of necessary parameters and the configuration of the frequency inverter by the software.

Operating Instructions
The Operating Instructions describe and document all functions of the frequency inverter. The parameters required for adapting the frequency inverter to specific applications as well as the wide range of additional functions are described in detail.

Application Manual
The application manual supplements the documentation for purposeful installation and commissioning of the frequency inverter. Information on various subjects connected with the use of the frequency inverter are described specific to the application.

Installation Instructions
Complementing the Quick Start Guide and the Operating Instructions, the Installation Instructions provide information on how to install and use the additional/optional components.

If you need a copy of the documentation or additional information, contact your local representative of BONFIGLIOLI.

The following pictograms and signal words are used in the documentation:

Danger!
Danger refers to an immediate threat. Non-compliance with the precaution described may result in death, serious injury or material damage.

Warning!
Warning refers to a possible threat. Non-compliance with the warning may result in death, serious injury or material damage.

Caution!
Caution refers to an indirect threat. Non-compliance may result in personal or material damage.

Attention!
Attention refers to a possible operational behavior or an undesired condition that can occur in accordance with the reference text.

Note
Note and the related text provide useful information which supplements the corresponding part of the documentation.

1 General Safety Instructions and Information on Use 8
1.1 General Information 8
1.2 Purpose of the Frequency Inverters 9
1.3 Transport and Storage 9
1.4 Handling and Installation 9
1.5 Electrical Connection 10
1.6 Information on Use 10
1.7 Maintenance and Service 10

2 Scope of Supply 11
2.1 ACT 201 (up to 3.0 kW) and ACT 401 (up to 4.0 kW) 11
2.2 ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW) and ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW) 12
2.3 ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW) 13
2.4 ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW) 14
2.5 ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW) 15

3 Technical Data 16
3.1 General technical data 16
3.2 Technical data of control electronics 17
3.3 ACT 201 (0.55 up to 3.0 kW, 230 V) 18
3.4 ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW, 230 V) 19
3.5 ACT 401 (0.55 up to 4.0 kW, 400 V) 20
3.6 ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW, 400 V) 21
3.7 ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW, 400 V) 22
3.8 ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW, 400 V) 23
3.9 ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW, 400 V) 24
3.10 Operation Diagrams 25

4 Mechanical Installation 26
4.1 ACT 201 (up to 3.0 kW) and ACT 401 (up to 4.0 KW) 26
4.2 ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW) and ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW) 27
4.3 ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW) 28
4.4 ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW) 29
4.5 ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW) 30

5 Electrical Installation 31
5.1 EMC Information 32
5.2 Block diagram 33
5.3 Optional Components 34
5.4 Connection of the device 35
  5.4.1 Dimensioning of the conductor cross section 35
    5.4.1.1 Typical conductor cross sections 35
  5.4.2 Mains Connection 36

5.4.3 Motor connection 37
5.4.3.1 Motor cable length, without filter 37
5.4.3.2 Motor cable length, with output filter dU/dt 37
5.4.3.3 Motor cable length, with sine filter 37
5.4.3.4 Group drive 38
5.4.3.5 Speed sensor connection 38
5.4.4 Connection of a Brake Resistor 38

5.5 Connection of the construction sizes 39
5.5.1 ACT 201 (up to 3.0 kW) and ACT 401 (up to 4.0 kW) 39
5.5.2 ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW) and ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW) 41
5.5.3 ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW) 43
5.5.4 ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW) 45
5.5.5 ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW) 47

5.6 Control Terminals 49
5.6.1 Relay Output 50
5.6.2 Control Terminals – Terminal Diagram 51
5.6.2.1 Configuration 110 – Sensorless Control 51
5.6.2.2 Configuration 111 – Sensorless Control with Technology Controller 52
5.6.2.3 Configuration 410 – Sensorless Field-Oriented Control 52
5.6.2.4 Configuration 411 – Sensorless Field-Oriented Control with Technology Controller ... 53
5.6.2.5 Configuration 430 – Sensorless Field-Oriented Control, speed or torque controlled ... 53
5.6.2.6 Configuration 210 – Field-Oriented Control, speed controlled 54
5.6.2.7 Configuration 211 – Field-Oriented Control, with Technology Controller 54
5.6.2.8 Configuration 230 – Field-Oriented Control, speed and torque controlled 55

6 Control Unit KP500 56

6.1 Menu Structure 57

6.2 Main Menu 57

6.3 Actual Value Menu (VAL) 58

6.4 Parameter Menu (PARA) 59

6.5 Copy Menu (CPY) 60
6.5.1 Reading the Stored Information 60
6.5.2 Menu Structure 61
6.5.3 Selecting the Source 61
6.5.4 Selecting the Destination 62
6.5.5 Copy Operation 62
6.5.6 Error Messages 63

6.6 Read data from the KP 500 control unit 64
6.6.1 Activating 64
6.6.2 Transfer data 65
6.6.3 Reset to Normal Mode 66

6.7 Control Menu (CTRL) 66

6.8 Controlling the Motor via the Control Unit 67

7 Commissioning of the Frequency Inverter 70

7.1 Switching on Mains Voltage 70

7.2 Setup Using the Control Unit 70
7.2.1 Configuration 71
7.2.2 Data Set 72
7.2.3 Motor Type 72
7.2.4 Machine Data 73
7.2.5 Plausibility check 74
7.2.6 Parameter identification 75

7.2.7 Application data 77
7.2.7.1 Acceleration and deceleration 77
7.2.7.2 Set points at multi-functional input 78
7.2.7.3 Selection of an actual value for display 78

7.3 Check direction of rotation 79

7.4 Speed sensor 80
7.4.1 Speed sensor 1 80
7.4.2 Speed sensor 2 81

7.5 Set-up via the Communication Interface 82

8 Inverter Data 84

8.1 Serial Number 84

8.2 Optional Modules 84

8.3 Inverter Software Version 84

8.4 Set Password 84

8.5 Control Level 85

8.6 User Name 85

8.7 Configuration 85

8.8 Language 88

8.9 Programming 88

9 Machine Data 89

9.1 Rated Motor Parameters 89

9.2 Further motor parameters 90
9.2.1 Stator Resistance 90
9.2.2 Leakage Coefficient 90
9.2.3 Magnetizing Current 91
9.2.4 Rated Slip Correction Factor 91

9.3 Internal values 92

9.4 Speed sensor 1 92
9.4.1 Operation mode speed sensor 1 92
9.4.2 Division marks, speed sensor 1 93

10 System Data 94

10.1 Actual Value System 94

10.2 Volume Flow and Pressure 94

11 Operational Behavior 95

11.1 Starting Behavior 95
11.1.1 Starting Behavior of Sensorless Control System 95
11.1.1.1 Starting Current 97
11.1.1.2 Frequency Limit 97
11.1.2 Flux Formation 97

11.2 Stopping Behavior 98
11.2.1 Switch-Off Threshold 100
11.2.2 Holding Time 100

11.3 Direct current brake 100

11.4 Auto Start 101

11.5 Search Run 102

11.6 Positioning ... 103
11.6.1 Reference Positioning ... 104
11.6.2 Axis Positioning ... 10712
Error and warning behavior ... 109

12.1 Overload Ixt ... 109

12.2 Temperature ... 109

12.3 Controller Status ... 110

12.4 IDC Compensation Limit ... 110

12.5 Frequency Switch-Off Limit ... 110

12.6 Motor Temperature ... 111

12.7 Phase Failure ... 111

12.8 Automatic Error Acknowledgment ... 112

13 Reference Values ... 113

13.1 Frequency Limits ... 113

13.2 Slip Frequency ... 113

13.3 Percentage Value Limits ... 113

13.4 Frequency Reference Channel ... 114
13.4.1 Block Diagram ... 115

13.5 Reference Percentage Channel ... 117
13.5.1 Block Diagram ... 117

13.6 Fixed Reference Values ... 119
13.6.1 Fixed Frequencies ... 119
13.6.2 JOG-Frequency ... 119
13.6.3 Fixed Percentages ... 120

13.7 Frequency ramps ... 120

13.8 Percentage Value Ramps ... 123

13.9 Block Frequencies ... 123

13.10 Motor Potentiometer ... 124
13.10.1 Motorpoti (MP) ... 125
13.10.2 Motorpoti (KP) ... 125
13.10.3 Controlling the Motor via the Control Unit ... 126

13.11 Repetition frequency input ... 127

14 Control Inputs and Outputs ... 128

14.1 Multi-function input MFI1 ... 128
14.1.1 Analog Input MFI1A ... 128
14.1.1.1 Characteristic ... 128
14.1.1.2 Scaling ... 130
14.1.1.3 Tolerance Band and Hysteresis ... 130
14.1.1.4 Filter Time Constant ... 131
14.1.1.5 Error and warning behavior ... 132

14.2 Multi-function output MFO1 ... 132
14.2.1 Analog Output MFO1A ... 133
14.2.1.1 Output Characteristic ... 133
14.2.2 Frequency Output MFO1F ... 134
14.2.2.1 Scaling ... 134

14.3 Digital Outputs ... 135
14.3.1 Setting Frequency ... 136
14.3.2 Reference value reached ... 136

14.3.3 Flux Formation Ended 137
14.3.4 Open brake 137
14.3.5 Current Limitation 137
14.3.6 External Fan 137
14.3.7 Warning Mask 138

14.4 Digital Inputs 140
14.4.1 Start command 143
14.4.2 3-Wire-Control 143
14.4.3 Error Acknowledgment 144
14.4.4 Timer 144
14.4.5 Thermo-contact 144
14.4.6 n-/M-Control Change-Over 144
14.4.7 Data Set Change-Over 145
14.4.8 Fixed Value Change-Over 146
14.4.9 Motor Potentiometer 147

14.5 Function Modules 147
14.5.1 Timer 147
14.5.1.1 Time Constant 148
14.5.2 Comparator 150
14.5.3 Logic Modules 151

15 V/f - Characteristic 156

15.1 Dynamic Voltage Pre-Control 157

16 Control Functions 158

16.1 Intelligent current limits 158

16.2 Voltage controller 159

16.3 Technology Controller 163

16.4 Functions of Sensorless Control 171
16.4.1 Slip compensation 171
16.4.2 Current limit value controller 171

16.5 Functions of Field-Orientated Control 172
16.5.1 Current Controller 172
16.5.2 Torque Controller 174
16.5.2.1 Limit Value Sources 174
16.5.3 Speed controller 175
16.5.3.1 Limitation of Speed Controller 177
16.5.3.2 Limit Value Sources 178
16.5.4 Acceleration Pre-Control 178
16.5.5 Field Controller 179
16.5.5.1 Limitation of field controller 180
16.5.6 Modulation Controller 180
16.5.6.1 Limitation of Modulation Controller 181

17 Special Functions 182

17.1 Pulse Width Modulation 182

17.2 Fan 183

17.3 Bus controller 183

17.4 Brake Chopper and Brake Resistance 185
17.4.1 Dimensioning of Brake Resistor 186

17.5 Motor Circuit Breaker 187

17.6 V-belt Monitoring 188

17.7 Functions of Field-Orientated Control 189
17.7.1 Motor Chopper 189
17.7.2 Temperature Adjustment 190
17.7.3 Encoder Monitoring 191

18 Actual Values 192

18.1 Actual Values of the Frequency Inverter 192

18.2 Actual Values of the Machine 193

18.3 Actual Value Memory 194

18.4 Actual Values of the System 195
18.4.1 Actual Value System 195
18.4.2 Volume Flow and Pressure 196

19 Error Protocol 197

19.1 Error List 197
19.1.1 Error Messages 197

19.2 Error Environment 199

20 Operational and Error Diagnosis 201

20.1 Status Display 201

20.2 Status of Digital Signals 201

20.3 Controller Status 202

20.4 Warning Status 203

21 Parameter List 204

21.1 Actual Value Menu (VAL) 204

21.2 Parameter Menu (PARA) 207

1 General Safety Instructions and Information on Use

Warning! The specifications and instructions contained in the documentation must be complied with strictly during installation and commissioning. Only qualified staff who has read the documentation and, in particular, the safety instructions carefully is allowed to carry out installation or commissioning work or to operate the frequency inverters. The term „Qualified Staff‟ refers to anybody who is familiar with the installation, assembly, commissioning and operation of the frequency inverter and has the proper qualification for the job.

The present documentation was prepared with great care and it was subjected to extensive and repeated reviews. For reasons of clarity, it was not possible to include all details of all types of the product in the documentation. Neither was it possible to consider all conceivable installation, operation or maintenance situations. If you require further information or if you meet with specific problems which are not dealt with in sufficient detail in the documentation, contact your local BONFIGLIOLI agent.
We would also like to point out that the contents of this documentation do not form part of any previous or existing agreement, assurance or legal relationship. Neither are they intended to supplement or replace such agreements, assurances or legal relationships. The manufacturer's obligations are exclusively specified in the relevant purchase contract. This contract also contains all and any warranty regulations which may apply to the relevant scope of supply. These contractual warranty provisions are neither extended nor limited by the specifications contained in this documentation.
The manufacturer reserves the right to correct or amend the specifications, product information and omissions in these operating instructions without notice. The manufacturer shall not be liable for any damage, injuries or costs which may be caused by the aforementioned reasons.

1.1 General Information

Warning! The DC-link circuit of the frequency inverter is charged during operation, i.e. there is always the risk of contact with high voltage. Frequency inverters are used for driving moving parts and they may become hot at the surface during operation.
Any unauthorized removal of the necessary covers, improper use, wrong installation or operation may result in serious injuries or material damage.
In order to avoid such injuries or damage, only qualified staff may carry out the transport, installation, setup or maintenance work required. The standards EN 50178, IEC 60364 (Cenelec HD 384 or DIN VDE 0100), IEC 60664-1 (Cenelec HD 625 or VDE 0110-1), BGV A2 (VBG 4) as well as the applicable national regulations must be complied with. The term „Qualified Staff‟ refers to anybody who is familiar with the installation, assembly, commissioning and operation of the frequency inverter as well as the possible hazards and has the proper qualification for the job.

1.2 Purpose of the Frequency Inverters

Warning! The frequency inverters are electrical drive components intended for installation in industrial plants or machines. Commissioning and start of operation is not allowed until it has been verified that the machine meets the requirements of the EC Machinery Directive 98/37/EEC and EN 60204. In accordance with the CE marking requirements, the frequency inverters also comply with the Low Voltage Directive 72/23/EEC as well as EN 50178 / DIN VDE 0160 and EN 61800-2. The user shall be responsible for making sure that the requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC are met. Frequency inverters are only available at specialized dealers and are exclusively intended for professional use as per EN 61000-3-2.

The frequency inverters are also marked with the UL label according to UL508c, which proves that they also meet the requirements of the CSA Standard C22.2-No. 14-95.

The technical data, connection specifications and information on ambient conditions are indicated on the name plate and in the documentation and must be complied with in any case. Anyone involved in any kind of work at the device must have read the instructions carefully and understood them before starting the work.

1.3 Transport and Storage

The frequency inverters must be transported and stored in an appropriate way. During transport and storage the devices must remain in their original packaging. The units may only be stored in dry rooms which are protected against dust and moisture and are exposed to little temperature deviations only. Observe the climatic conditions according to EN 50178 and the marking on the packaging. The frequency inverters must not be stored for more than one year without connecting them to nominal voltage.

1.4 Handling and Installation

Warning! Damaged or destroyed components must not be put into operation because they may be a health hazard.

The frequency inverters are to be used in accordance with the documentation as well as the applicable directives and standards. They must be handled carefully and protected against mechanical stress. Do not bend any components or change the isolating distances. Do not touch any electronic components or contacts. The devices are equipped with components which are sensitive to electrostatic energy and can easily be damaged if handled improperly. Any use of damaged or destroyed components shall be considered as a non-compliance with the applicable standards. Do not remove any warning signs from the device.

1.5 Electrical Connection

Warning! Before any assembly or connection work, discharge the frequency inverter. Verify that the frequency inverter is discharged.

Do not touch the terminals because the capacitors may still be charged.

Comply with the information given in the operating instructions and on the frequency inverter label.

When working at the frequency inverters, comply with the applicable standards BGV A2 (VBG 4), VDE 0100 and other national directives. Comply with the electrical installation instructions given in the documentation as well as the relevant directives. The manufacturer of the industrial machine or plant is responsible for making sure that the limit values specified in the EMC product standard EN 61800-3 for electrical variable-speed drives are complied with. The documentation contains information on EMC-conforming installation. The cables connected to the frequency inverters may not be subjected to high-voltage insulation tests unless appropriate circuitry measures are taken before. Otherwise the unit may be damaged.

1.6 Information on Use

Warning! The frequency inverter may be connected to power supply every 60 s. Consider this for a jog operation of a mains contactor. For commissioning or after an emergency stop, a non-recurrent, direct restart is permissible.

After a failure and restoration of the power supply, the motor may start unexpectedly if the AutoStart function is activated. Install protective equipment if personal injury or material damage is possible.

Before commissioning and start of normal operation, make sure to fix all covers and check all terminals. Check the additional monitoring and protective devices according to EN 60204 and applicable the safety directives (e.g. Working Machines Act, Accident Prevention Directives etc.).

No connection work may be performed, while the system is in operation.

1.7 Maintenance and Service

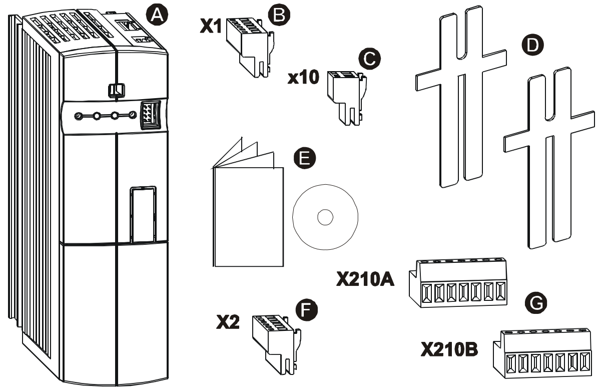
Warning! Unauthorized opening and improper interventions can lead to personal injury or material damage. Repairs on the frequency inverters may only be carried out by the manufacturer or persons authorized by the manufacturer. Check protective equipment regularly.

2 Scope of Supply

Thanks to the modular hardware components, the frequency inverters can be integrated in the automation concept easily. The scope of delivery described can be supplemented by optional components and adapted to the customer-specific requirements. The plug-in type connection terminals enable a safe function and an economical assembly.

2.1 ACT 201 (up to 3.0 kW) and ACT 401 (up to 4.0 kW)

Scope of Supply



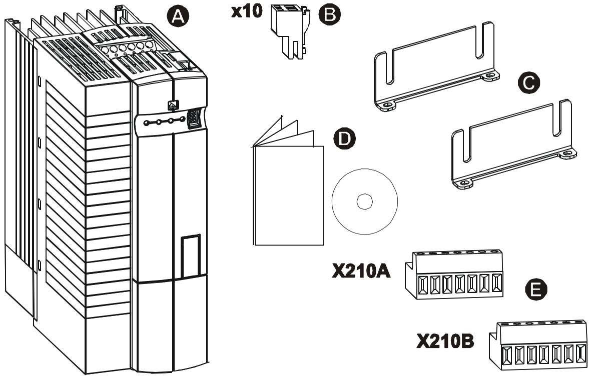
Scope of Supply

A	Frequency inverter
B	Terminal strip X1 (Phoenix ZEC 1,5/ST7,5) Plug-in terminals for mains connection and DC linking
C	Terminal strip X10 (Phoenix ZEC 1.5/3ST5.0) Plug-in terminals for the relay output
D	Standard fixtures for vertical assembly
E	Brief Instructions and manuals on CD
F	Terminal strip X2 (Phoenix ZEC 1,5/ST7,5) Plug-in terminal for brake resistor and motor connection
G	Control terminals X210A / X210B (Wieland DST85 / RM3.5) Plug-in terminal for connection of the control signals

Note: Please check incoming goods for quality, quantity and nature without delay. Obvious defects such as exterior damage of the packing and/or the unit must be notified to the sender within seven days for insurance reasons.

2.2 ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW) and ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW)

Scope of Supply

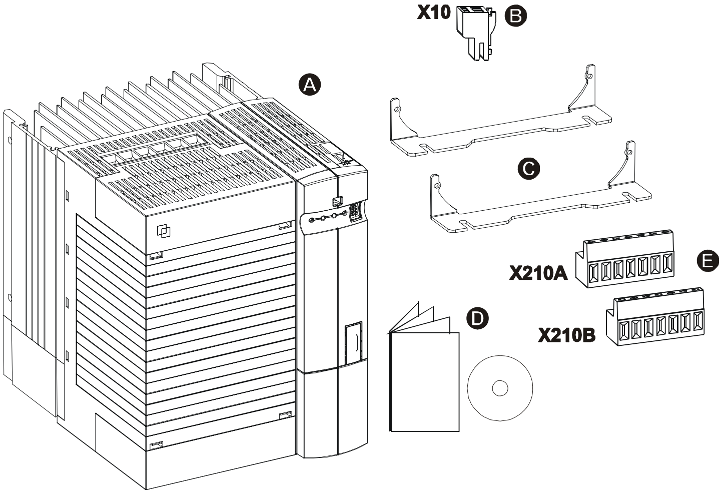


Scope of Supply	
Ⓐ	Frequency inverter
Ⓑ	Terminal strip X10 (Phoenix ZEC 1.5/3ST5.0) Plug-in terminals for the relay output
Ⓒ	Standard fixtures with fixing screws (M4x20, M4x60) for vertical assembly
Ⓓ	Brief Instructions and manuals on CD
Ⓔ	Control terminals X210A / X210B (Wieland DST85 / RM3.5) Plug-in terminal for connection of the control signals

Note: Please check incoming goods for quality, quantity and nature without delay. Obvious defects such as exterior damage of the packing and/or the unit must be notified to the sender within seven days for insurance reasons.

2.3 ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW)

Scope of Supply

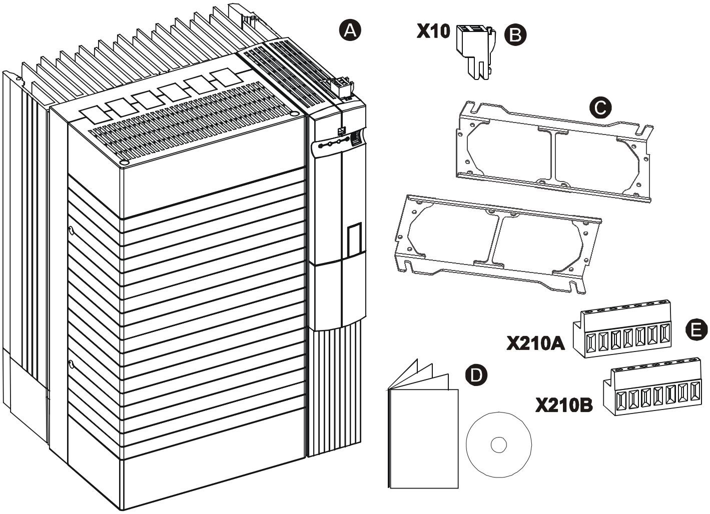


Scope of Supply	
A	Frequency inverter
B	Terminal strip X10 (Phoenix ZEC 1.5/3ST5.0) Plug-in terminals for the relay output
C	Standard fixtures with fixing screws (M4x20, M4x70) for vertical assembly
D	Brief Instructions and manuals on CD
E	Control terminals X210A / X210B (Wieland DST85 / RM3.5) Plug-in terminal for connection of the control signals

Note: Please check incoming goods for quality, quantity and nature without delay. Obvious defects such as exterior damage of the packing and/or the unit must be notified to the sender within seven days for insurance reasons.

2.4 ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW)

Scope of Supply

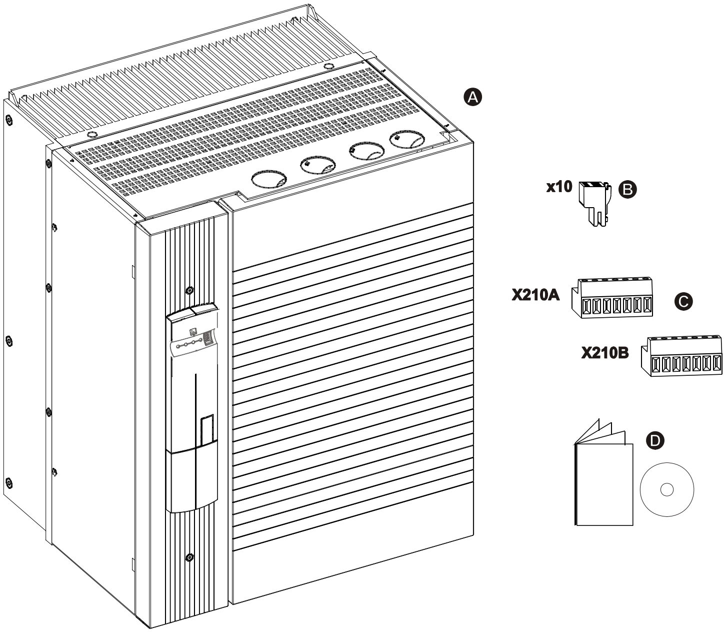


Scope of Supply	
A	Frequency inverter
B	Terminal strip X10 (Phoenix ZEC 1.5/3ST5.0) Plug-in terminals for the relay output
C	Standard fixtures with fixing screws (M5x20) for vertical assembly
D	Brief Instructions and manuals on CD
E	Control terminals X210A / X210B (Wieland DST85 / RM3.5) Plug-in terminal for connection of the control signals

Note: Please check incoming goods for quality, quantity and nature without delay. Obvious defects such as exterior damage of the packing and/or the unit must be notified to the sender within seven days for insurance reasons.

2.5 ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW)

Scope of Supply



	Scope of Supply
Ⓐ	Frequency inverter
Ⓑ	Terminal strip X10 (Phoenix ZEC 1.5/3ST5.0) Plug-in terminals for the relay output
Ⓒ	Control terminals X210A / X210B (Wieland DST85 / RM3.5) Plug-in terminal for connection of the control signals
Ⓓ	Brief Instructions and manuals on CD

Note: Please check incoming goods for quality, quantity and nature without delay. Obvious defects such as exterior damage of the packing and/or the unit must be notified to the sender within seven days for insurance reasons.

3 Technical Data

3.1 General technical data

CE conformity	The frequency inverters ACT meet the requirements of the low-voltage directive 73/23/EEC and the requirements of the standards EN 50178 and EN 61800-2.
EMC directive	For proper installation of the frequency inverter in accordance with the standard EN 61800-3 comply with the installation instructions in this operation manual.
Interference immunity factor	The frequency inverters meet the requirements of the standard EN 61800-3 for operation in industrial environment.
UL approval	The frequency inverters are marked with the UL label according to UL508c, which proves that they also meet the requirements of the CSA Standard C22.2-No. 14-95.
Ambient temperature	Operation: 0 … 55 °C; for exceeding 40 °C comply with the derating.
Climate class	Operation: 3K3 (EN60721-3-3) Relative air humidity 15 ... 85 %, not condensing
Degree of protection	IP20 on the condition of proper installation of the covers and terminals.
Mounting altitude	Up to 1000 m at rated operating conditions. Up to 4000 m with derating.
Storage	According to EN 50178; BONFIGLIOLI VECTRON recommends the connection of the device to mains voltage for 60 minutes latest after one year of storage.
Functions	Appropriate control behaviours (configurations) adapted for motors and applications – Speed-/torque control switch-over – Various protective functions for motor and frequency inverter – Positioning absolute or relative to a reference point – Synchronization to a rotating drive – Special brake control and load detection for hoist drives – S-ramps for jerk limitation at acceleration and deceleration – Technology- (PI) controller – Parameterization of master-slave operation via system bus – Error protocol – Simplified and enhanced operation via PC (commissioning, parameterization, record back-up, diagnosis with scope)
Parameterization	– Freely programmable digital inputs and outputs – Various modules for logical operations and signal processing – Four discrete records including motor parameters

3.2 Technical data of control electronics

Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	DC 20 V output (I_{max}=180 mA)
X210A.2	Ground 20 V/ Ground 24 V (ext.)
X210A.3	Digital input **Controller Release**
X210A.4	Digital inputs 1)
X210A.5	
X210A.6	
X210A.7	

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Digital input 1)
X210B.2	GND
X210B.3	Digital output 1)
X210B.4	Multi-function output 1) (voltage signal proportional actual frequency value, factory setting)
X210B.5	Supply voltage DC 10 V for reference value potentiometer, (I_{max}=4 mA)
X210B.6	Multi-function input 1) (Reference speed 0 … +10 V, factory setting)
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

Relay output X10	
S3OUT.1	Monitoring function (factory setting)

1) The control terminals are freely configurable.

Note:
The various configurations set the control terminals to defined adjustments. These adjustments can be adapted to user-specific applications and various functions can be assigned to the freely programmable control terminals.

Technical data of the control terminals
Digital inputs (X210A.3…X210B.1): Low Signal: DC 0…3 V, High Signal: DC 12…30 V, Input resistance: 2.3 kΩ, response time: 16 ms, PLC compatible X210A.6 and X210A.7 additional: frequency signal: DC 0 V...30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, f_{max}=150 kHz
Digital output (X210B.3): Low Signal: DC 0…3 V, High Signal: DC 12…30 V, maximum output current: 40 mA, PLC compatible
Multi-function output (X210B.4): analog signal: DC 24 V, maximum output current: 40 mA, pulse-width modulated (f_{PWM}= 116 Hz), digital signal: Low Signal: DC 0…3 V, High Signal: DC 12…30 V, output current: 40 mA, PLC compatible, frequency signal: output voltage: DC 0…24 V, maximum output current: 40 mA, maximum output frequency: 150 kHz
Multi-function input (X210B.6): analog signal: input voltage: DC 0… 10 V (R_i=70 kΩ), input current: DC 0…20 mA (R_i=500 Ω), digital signal: Low Signal: DC 0…3 V, High Signal: DC 12 V…30 V, response time: 16 ms, PLC compatible
Conductor cross section: The terminals are suitable for the conductor cross sections: with wire end ferrule: 0.25…1.0 mm² without wire end ferrule: 0.14…1.5 mm²

3.3 ACT 201 (0.55 up to 3.0 kW, 230 V)

Type								
ACT 201			-05	-07	-09	-11	-13	-15
Output motor side								
Recommended shaft output	P	kW	0.55	0.75	1.1	1.5	2.2	3.0 4)
Output current	I	A	3.0	4.0	5.4 5)	7.0	9.5	12.5 4) 5)
Long-term overload current (60 s)	I	A	4.5	6.0	7.3	10.5	14.3	16.2
Short-term overload current (1 s)	I	A	6.0	8.0	8.0	14.0	19.0	19.0
Output voltage	U	V	Maximum up to mains voltage, three-phase					
Protection	-	-	Short circuit / earth fault proof					
Rotary field frequency	f	Hz	0 ... 1000, depending on switching frequency					
Switching frequency	f	kHz	2. 4. 8. 12. 16					
Output brake resistor								
min. brake resistor	R	Ω	100	100	100	37	37	37
Recommended brake resistor (U_{dBC} = 385 V)	R	Ω	230	160	115	75	55	37
Input, mains side								
Mains current 3), 3ph/PE 1ph/N/PE; 2ph/PE	I	A	3 5.4	4 7.2	5.5 1) 9.5 2)	7 13.2	9.5 16.5 2)	10.5 1) 16.5 2) 4) 7)
Mains voltage	U	V	184 ... 264					
Mains frequency	f	Hz	45 ... 66					
Fuse 3ph/PE 1ph/N/PE; 2ph/PE	I	A	6 10		10 16		16 20	16 20
UL Type 250 VAC RK5, 3ph/PE 1ph/N/PE; 2ph/PE	I	A	6 10		10 15		15 20	15 20
Mechanics								
Dimensions	HxWxD	mm	190x60x175			250x60x175		
Weight (approx.)	m	kg	1.2			1.6		
Degree of protection	-	-	IP20 (EN60529)					
Terminals	A	mm²	0.2 ... 1.5					
Form of assembly	-	-	vertical					
Ambient conditions								
Energy dissipation (2 kHz switching frequency)	P	W	43	53	73	84	115	170
Coolant temperature	T_n	°C	0 ... 40 (3K3 DIN IEC 721-3-3)					
Storage temperature	T_L	°C	-25 ... 55					
Transport temperature	T_T	°C	-25 ... 70					
Rel. air humidity	-	%	15 ... 85; not condensing					

If required by the customer, the switching frequency may be increased if the output current is reduced at the same time. Comply with the applicable standards and regulations for this operating point.

Output current 6)					
Frequency inverter nominal power	Switching frequency				
	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
0.55 kW	3.0 A	3.0 A	3.0 A	2.5 A	2.0 A
0.75 kW	4.0 A	4.0 A	4.0 A	3.4 A	2.7 A
1.1 kW	5.4 A 2)	5.4 A 2) 5)	5.4 A 2) 5)	4.5 A 2) 5)	3.7 A 5)
1.5 kW	7.0 A	7.0 A	7.0 A	5.9 A	4.8 A
2.2 kW	9.5 A 2)	9.5 A 2)	9.5 A 2)	8.0 A 2)	6.5 A
3.0 kW 2) 4)	12.5 A 1)	12.5 A 1) 5)	12.5 A 1) 5)	10.5 A 1) 5)	8.5 A 5)

1) Three-phase connection requires a commutating choke.
2) One- and two-phase connection requires a commutating choke.
3) Mains current with relative mains impedance ≥ 1% (see chapter„Electrical installation")
4) Maximum output current is 9.5 A for one- and two-phase connection.
5) Switching frequency is reduced in thermal limit range
6) Maximum current in continuous operation
7) The device for one-phase connection is not included in the product catalogue. It is available on demand.

3.4 ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW, 230 V)

Type						
ACT 201			-18	-19	-21	-22
Output motor side						
Recommended shaft output	P	kW	4.0	5.5	7.5 4)	9.2
Output current	I	A	18.0	22.0	32.0	35.0
Long-term overload current (60 s)	I	A	26.3	30.3	44.5	51.5
Short-term overload current (1 s)	I	A	33.0	33.0	64.0	64.0
Output voltage	U	V	Maximum up to mains voltage, three-phase			
Protection	-	-	Short circuit / earth fault proof			
Rotary field frequency	f	Hz	0 ... 1000, depending on switching frequency			
Switching frequency	f	kHz	2, 4, 8, 12, 16			
Output brake resistor						
min. brake resistor	R	Ω	24	24	12	12
Recommended brake resistor (U_{dBC} = 385 V)	R	Ω	30	24	16	12
Input, mains side						
Mains current 3), 3ph/PE 1ph/N/PE; 2ph/PE	I	A	18 28 2) 7)	20 1) - 4)	28.2 1) - 4)	35.6 1) - 4)
Mains voltage	U	V	184 ... 264			
Mains frequency	f	Hz	45 ... 66			
Fuse 3ph/PE 1ph/N/PE; 2ph/PE	I	A	25 35	25 - 4)	35 - 4)	50 - 4)
UL Type 250 VAC RK5, 3ph/PE 1ph/N/PE; 2ph/PE	I	A	20	25	30	40
Mechanics						
Dimensions	HxWxD	mm	250x100x200		250x125x200	
Weight (approx.)	m	kg	3.0		3.7	
Degree of protection	-	-	IP20 (EN60529)			
Terminals	A	mm²	0.2 … 6		0.2 … 16	
Form of assembly	-	-	vertical			
Ambient conditions						
Energy dissipation (2 kHz switching frequency)	P	W	200	225	310	420
Coolant temperature	T_n	°C	0 ... 40 (3K3 DIN IEC 721-3-3)			
Storage temperature	T_L	°C	-25 ... 55			
Transport temperature	T_T	°C	-25 ... 70			
Rel. air humidity	-	%	15 ... 85; not condensing			

If required by the customer, the switching frequency may be increased if the output current is reduced at the same time. Comply with the applicable standards and regulations for this operating point.

Output current 6)					
Frequency inverter nominal power	Switching frequency				
	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
4.0 kW	18.0 A 2)	18.0 A 2)	18.0 A 2)	15.1 A 2)	12.2 A
5.5 kW 4)	23.0 A 1)	22.7 A 1), 5)	22.0 A 1), 5)	18.5 A 5)	15.0 A 5)
7.5 kW 4)	32.0 A 1)	32.0 A 1)	32.0 A 1)	26.9 A 1)	21.8 A
9.2 kW 4)	40.0 A 1)	38.3 A 1), 5)	35.0 A 1), 5)	29.4 A 1), 5)	23.8 A 5)

1) Three-phase connection requires a commutating choke.
2) One- and two-phase connection requires a commutating choke.
3) Mains current with relative mains impedance ≥ 1% (see chapter„Electrical installation")
4) Only three-phase connection
5) Switching frequency is reduced in thermal limit range.
6) Maximum current in continuous operation
7) The device for one-phase connection is not included in the product catalogue. It is available on demand.

3.5 ACT 401 (0.55 up to 4.0 kW, 400 V)

Type										
ACT 401			-05	-07	-09	-11	-12	-13	-15	-18
Output motor side										
Recommended shaft output	P	kW	0.55	0.75	1.1	1.5	1.85	2.2	3.0	4.0
Output current	I	A	1.8	2.4	3.2	3.8 3)	4.2	5.8	7.8	9.0 3)
Long-term overload current (60 s)	I	A	2.7	3.6	4.8	5.7	6.3	8.7	11.7	13.5
Short-term overload current (1 s)	I	A	3.6	4.8	6.4	7.6	8.4	11.6	15.6	18.0
Output voltage	U	V	Maximum up to mains voltage, three-phase							
Protection	-	-	Short circuit / earth fault proof							
Rotary filed frequency	f	Hz	0 ... 1000, depending on switching frequency							
Switching frequency	f	kHz	2, 4, 8, 12, 16							
Output brake resistor										
min. brake resistor	R	Ω	300	300	300	300	136	136	136	92
Recommended brake resistor (U_{dBC} = 770 V)	R	Ω	930	634	462	300	300	220	148	106
Input, mains side										
Mains current 2) 3ph/PE	I	A	1.8	2.4	2.8 1)	3.3 1)	4.2	5.8	6.8 1)	7.8 1)
Mains voltage	U	V	320 ... 528							
Mains frequency	f	Hz	45 ... 66							
Fuse 3ph/PE	I	A	6					10		
UL-Type 600 VAC RK5. 3ph/PE	I	A	6					10		
Mechanics										
Dimensions	HxWxD	mm	190x60x175				250x60x175			
Weight (approx.)	m	kg	1.2				1.6			
Degree of protection	-	-	IP20 (EN60529)							
Terminals	A	mm^2	0.2 ... 1.5							
Form of assembly	-	-	vertical							
Ambient conditions										
Energy dissipation (2 kHz Switching frequency)	P	W	40	46	58	68	68	87	115	130
Coolant temperature	T_n	°C	0 ... 40 (3K3 DIN IEC 721-3-3)							
Storage temperature	T_L	°C	-25 ... 55							
Transport temperature	T_T	°C	-25 ... 70							
Rel. air humidity	-	%	15 ... 85; not condensing							

If required by the customer, the switching frequency may be increased if the output current is reduced at the same time. Comply with the applicable standards and regulations for this operating point.

Output current 4)					
Frequency inverter nominal power	Switching frequency				
	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
0.55 kW	1.8 A	1.8 A	1.8 A	1.5 A	1.2 A
0.75 kW	2.4 A	2.4 A	2.4 A	2.0 A	1.6 A
1.1 kW	3.2 A 1)	3.2 A 1)	3.2 A 1)	2.7 A 1)	2.2 A
1.5 kW 1)	3.8 A	3.8 A 3)	3.8 A 3)	3.2 A 3)	2.6 A 3)
1.85 kW	4.2 A	4.2 A	4.2 A	3.5 A	2.9 A
2.2 kW	5.8 A	5.8 A	5.8 A	4.9 A	3.9 A
3.0 kW	7.8 A 1)	7.8 A 1)	7.8 A 1)	6.6 A 1)	5.3 A
4.0 kW	9.0 A 1)	9.0 A 1) 3)	9.0 A 1) 3)	7.6 A 1) 3)	6.1 A 3)

1) Three-phase connection requires a commutating choke.
2) Mains current with relative mains impedance ≥ 1% (see chapter„Electrical installation")
3) Switching frequency is reduced in thermal limit range.
4) Maximum current in continuous operation

3.6 ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW, 400 V)

Type							
ACT 401			-19	-21	-22	-23	-25
Output. motor side							
Recommended shaft output	P	kW	5.5	7.5	9.2	11.0	15.0
Output current	I	A	14.0	18.0	22.0 3)	25.0	32.0
Long-term overload current (60 s)	I	A	21.0	26.3	30.3	37.5	44.5
Short-term overload current (1 s)	I	A	28.0	33.0	33.0	50.0	64.0
Output voltage	U	V	Maximum up to mains voltage, three-phase				
Protection	-	-	Short circuit / earth fault proof				
Rotary filed frequency	f	Hz	0 ... 1000, depending on switching frequency				
Switching frequency	f	kHz	2, 4, 8, 12, 16				
Output brake resistor							
min. brake resistor	R	Ω	48	48	48	32	32
Recommended brake resistor (U_{dBC} = 770 V)	R	Ω	80	58	48	48	32
Input, mains side							
Mains current 2) 3ph/PE	I	A	14.2	15.8 1)	20.0 1)	26.0	28.2 1)
Mains voltage	U	V	320 ... 528				
Mains frequency	f	Hz	45 ... 66				
Fuse 3ph/PE	I	A	16	25		35	
UL-Type 600 VAC RK5. 3ph/PE	I	A	20			30	40
Mechanics							
Dimensions	HxWxD	mm	250x100x200			250x125x200	
Weight (approx.)	m	kg	3.0			3.7	
Degree of protection	-	-	IP20 (EN60529)				
Terminals	A	mm^2	0.2 ... 6			0.2 ... 16	
Form of assembly	-	-	vertical				
Ambient conditions							
Energy dissipation (2 kHz Switching frequency)	P	W	145	200	225	240	310
Coolant temperature	T_n	°C	0 ... 40 (3K3 DIN IEC 721-3-3)				
Storage temperature	T_L	°C	-25 ... 55				
Transport temperature	T_T	°C	-25 ... 70				
Rel. air humidity	-	%	15 ... 85; not condensing				

If required by the customer, the switching frequency may be increased if the output current is reduced at the same time. Comply with the applicable standards and regulations for this operating point.

Output current					
Frequency inverter nominal power	Switching frequency				
	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz	12 kHz	16 kHz
5.5 kW	14.0 A	14.0 A	14.0 A	11.8 A	9.5 A
7.5 kW	18.0 A 1)	18.0 A 1)	18.0 A 1)	15.1 A 1)	12.2 A
9.2 kW 1)	23.0 A	22.7 A 3)	22.0 A 3)	18.5 A 3)	15.0 A 3)
11 kW	25.0 A	25.0 A	25.0 A	21.0 A	17.0 A
15 kW	32.0 A 1)	32.0 A 1)	32.0 A 1)	26.9 A 1)	21.8 A

1) Three-phase connection requires a commutating choke.
2) Mains current with relative mains impedance ≥ 1% (see chapter„Electrical installation")
3) Switching frequency is reduced in thermal limit range.
4) Maximum current in continuous operation

3.7 ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW, 400 V)

Type					
ACT 401			-27	-29	-31
Output. motor side					
Recommended shaft output	P	kW	18.5	22.0	30.0
Output current	I	A	40.0	45.0	60.0
Long-term overload current (60 s)	I	A	60.0	67.5	90.0
Short-term overload current (1 s)	I	A	80.0	90.0	120.0
Output voltage	U	V	Maximum up to mains voltage, three-phase		
Protection	-	-	Short circuit / earth fault proof		
Rotary filed frequency	f	Hz	0 ... 1000, depending on switching frequency		
Switching frequency	f	kHz	2, 4, 8		
Output brake resistor					
min. brake resistor	R	Ω	16		
Recommended brake resistor (U_{dBC} = 770 V)	R	Ω	26	22	16
Input, mains side					
Mains current 2) 3ph/PE	I	A	42.0	50.0	58.0 1)
Mains voltage	U	V	320 ... 528		
Mains frequency	f	Hz	45 ... 66		
Fuse 3ph/PE	I	A	50		63
UL-Type 600 VAC RK5. 3ph/PE	I	A	50		60
Mechanics					
Dimensions	HxWxD	mm	250x200x260		
Weight (approx.)	m	kg	8		
Degree of protection	-	-	IP20 (EN60529)		
Terminals	A	mm^2	up to 25		
Form of assembly	-	-	vertical		
Ambient conditions					
Energy dissipation (2 kHz Switching frequency)	P	W	445	535	605
Coolant temperature	T_n	°C	0 ... 40 (3K3 DIN IEC 721-3-3)		
Storage temperature	T_L	°C	-25 ... 55		
Transport temperature	T_T	°C	-25 ... 70		
Rel. air humidity	-	%	15 ... 85; not condensing		

If required by the customer, the switching frequency may be increased if the output current is reduced at the same time. Comply with the applicable standards and regulations for this operating point.

Output current 3)			
Frequency inverter nominal power	Switching frequency		
	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz
18.5 kW	40.0 A	40.0 A	40.0 A
22 kW	45.0 A	45.0 A	45.0 A
30 kW	60.0 A 1)	60.0 A 1)	60.0 A 1)

1) Three-phase connection requires a commutating choke.
2) Mains current with relative mains impedance ≥ 1% (see chapter„Electrical installation")
3) Maximum current in continuous operation

3.8 ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW, 400 V)

Type						
ACT 401			-33	-35	-37	-39
Output. motor side						
Recommended shaft output	P	kW	37.0	45.0	55.0	65.0
Output current	I	A	75.0	90.0	110.0	125.0
Long-term overload current (60 s)	I	A	112.5	135.0	165.0	187.5
Short-term overload current (1 s)	I	A	150.0	180.0	220.0	250.0
Output voltage	U	V	Maximum up to mains voltage, three-phase			
Protection	-	-	Short circuit / earth fault proof			
Rotary filed frequency	f	Hz	0 ... 1000, depending on switching frequency			
Switching frequency	f	kHz	2. 4. 8			
Output brake resistor [5]						
min. brake resistor	R	Ω	7.5			
Recommended brake resistor (U_{dBC} = 770 V)	R	Ω	13	11	9	7.5
Input, mains side						
Mains current [2] 3ph/PE	I	A	87.0	104.0	105.0 [1]	120.0 [1]
Mains voltage	U	V	320 ... 528			
Mains frequency	f	Hz	45 ... 66			
Fuse 3ph/PE	I	A	100	125	125	125
UL-Type 600 VAC RK5. 3ph/PE	I	A	100	125	125	125
Mechanics						
Dimensions	HxWxD	mm	400x275x260			
Weight (approx.)	m	kg	20			
Degree of protection	-	-	IP20 (EN60529)			
Terminals	A	mm^2	up to 70			
Form of assembly	-	-	Vertical			
Ambient conditions						
Energy dissipation (2 kHz Switching frequency)	P	W	665	830	1080	1255
Coolant temperature	T_n	°C	0 ... 40 (3K3 DIN IEC 721-3-3)			
Storage temperature	T_L	°C	-25 ... 55			
Transport temperature	T_T	°C	-25 ... 70			
Rel. air humidity	-	%	15 ... 85; not condensing			

If required by the customer, the switching frequency may be increased if the output current is reduced at the same time. Comply with the applicable standards and regulations for this operating point.

Output current [4]			
Frequency inverter nominal power	Switching frequency		
	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz
37 kW	75.0 A	75.0 A	75.0 A
45 kW	90.0 A	90.0 A	90.0 A
55 kW	110.0 A [1]	110.0 A [1]	110.0 A [1]
65 kW	125.0 A [1], [3]	125.0 A [1], [3]	125.0 A [1], [3]

[1] Three-phase connection requires a commutating choke.

[2] Mains current with relative mains impedance ≥ 1% (see chapter„Electrical installation")

[3] Switching frequency is reduced in thermal limit range

[4] Maximum current in continuous operation

[5] Optional the frequency inverter of this size is purchasable without brake transistor.

3.9 ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW, 400 V)

Type						
ACT 401			-43	-45	-47	-49
Output. motor side						
Recommended shaft output	P	kW	75.0	90.0	110.0	132.0
Output current	I	A	150.0	180.0	210.0	250.0
Long-term overload current (60 s)	I	A	225.0	270.0	315.0	332.0
Short-term overload current (1 s)	I	A	270.0	325.0	375.0	375.0
Output voltage	U	V	Maximum up to mains voltage, three-phase			
Protection	-	-	Short circuit / earth fault proof			
Rotary filed frequency	f	Hz	0 ... 1000, depending on switching frequency			
Switching frequency	f	kHz	2, 4, 8			
Output brake resistor (external) 5)						
min. brake resistor	R	Ω	4.5		3.0	
Recommended brake resistor (U_{dBC} = 770 V)	R	Ω	6.1	5.1	4.1	3.8
Input, mains side						
Mains current 2) 3ph/PE	I	A	143.0 1)	172.0 1)	208.0 1)	249.0 1)
Mains voltage	U	V	320 ... 528			
Mains frequency	f	Hz	45 ... 66			
Fuse 3ph/PE	I	A	160	200	250	315
UL-Type 600 VAC RK5. 3ph/PE	I	A	175	200	250	300
Mechanics						
Dimensions	HxWxD	mm	510x412x351			
Weight (approx.)	m	kg	45		48	
Degree of protection	-	-	IP20 (EN60529)			
Terminals	A	mm^2	up to 2 x 95			
Form of assembly	-	-	Vertical			
Ambient conditions						
Energy dissipation (2 kHz Switching frequency)	P	W	1600	1900	2300	2800
Coolant temperature	T_n	°C	0 ... 40 (3K3 DIN IEC 721-3-3)			
Storage temperature	T_L	°C	-25 ... 55			
Transport temperature	T_T	°C	-25 ... 70			
Rel. air humidity	-	%	15 ... 85; not condensing			

If required by the customer, the switching frequency may be increased if the output current is reduced at the same time. Comply with the applicable standards and regulations for this operating point.

Output current 4)			
Frequency inverter nominal power	Switching frequency		
	2 kHz	4 kHz	8 kHz
75 kW	150 A	150 A	150 A
90 kW	180 A	180 A	180 A
110 kW	210 A	210 A	210 A 3)
132 kW	250 A	250 A	250 A 3)

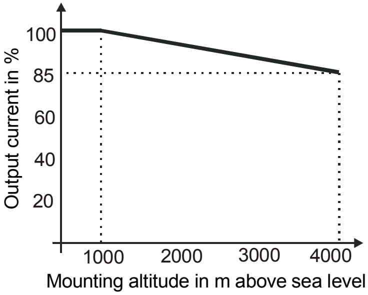
1) Three-phase connection requires a commutating choke.
2) Mains current with relative mains impedance ≥ 1% (see chapter„Electrical installation“)
3) Switching frequency is reduced in thermal limit range
4) Maximum current in continuous operation
5) Optional the frequency inverter of this size is purchasable without brake transistor.

3.10 Operation Diagrams

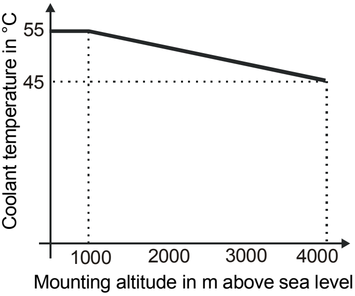
The technical data of the frequency inverters refer to the nominal point which was selected to enable a wide range of applications. A functionally and efficient dimensioning (de-rating) of the frequency inverters is possible based on the following diagrams.

Site altitude

Power reduction (Derating),
5%/1000 m above sea level,
h_{max} = 4000 m

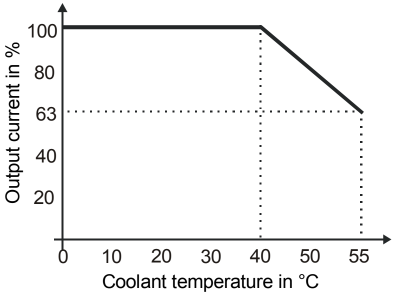


max. coolant temperature,
3.3 °C/1000 m above sea level,



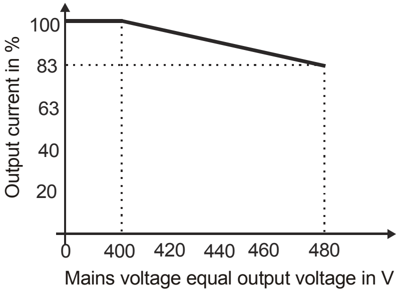
Coolant temperature

Power reduction (Derating)
2.5%/K upper 40 °C, T_{max}= 55 °C



Mains voltage

Reduction of output current at constant output power (Derating)
0.22%/ V upper 400 V, U_{max}= 480 V



4 Mechanical Installation

The frequency inverters of degree of protection IP20 are designed, as a standard, for installation in electrical cabinets.

- During installation, both the installation and the safety instructions as well as the device specifications must be complied with.

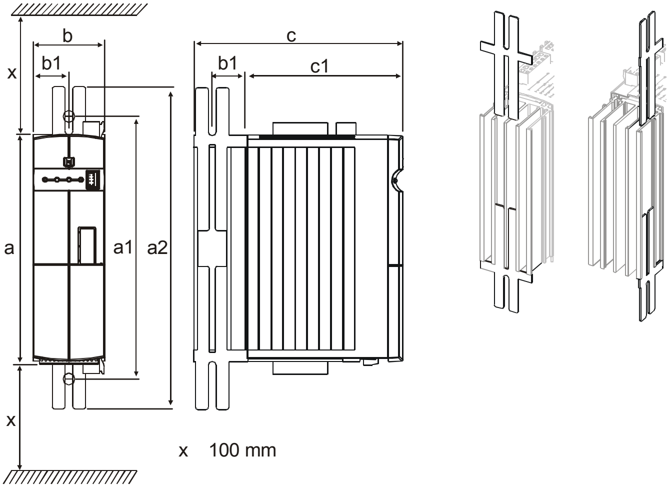
Warning! To avoid serious physical injuries or major material damage, only qualified persons are allowed to work on the devices.

Warning! During assembly, make sure that no foreign particles (e.g. filings, dust, wires, screws, tools) can get inside the frequency inverter. Otherwise there is the risk of short circuits and fire.
The frequency inverters comply with protection class IP20 only if the covers and terminals are mounted properly.
The units may only be used if these requirements are met.

4.1 ACT 201 (up to 3.0 kW) and ACT 401 (up to 4.0 KW)

The frequency inverter is mounted in a vertical position on the assembly panel by means of the standard fittings.
The following illustration shows the different mounting possibilities.

Standard installation



Assembly is effected by inserting the long side of the fixing plate in the heat sink and screwing it to the mounting plate.
The dimensions of the device and the installation dimensions are those of the standard device without optional components and are given in millimeters.

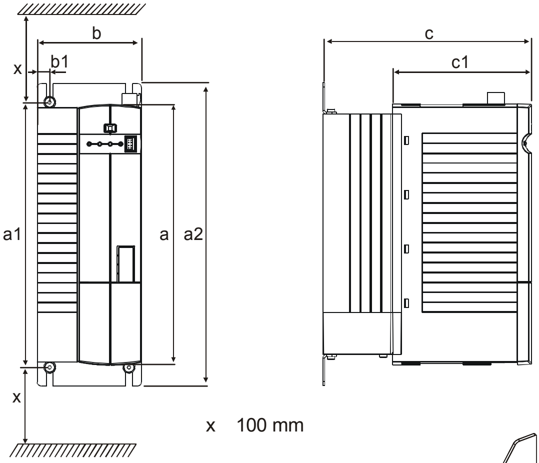
Dimensions in mm					Installation dimensions in mm			
Frequency inverter		a	b	c	a1	a2	b1	c1
ACT 201	**0.55 kW ... 1.1 kW**	190	60	178	210 ... 230	260	30	133
	1.5 kW ... 3.0 kW	250	60	178	270 ... 290	315	30	133
ACT 401	**0.55 kW ... 1.5 kW**	190	60	178	210 ... 230	260	30	133
	1.85 kW ... 4.0 kW	250	60	178	270 ... 290	315	30	133

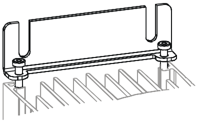
Caution! Mount the devices with sufficient clearance to other components so that the cooling air can circulate freely. Avoid soiling by grease and air pollution by dust, aggressive gases, etc.

4.2 ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW) and ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW)

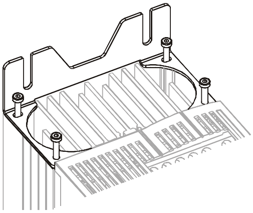
The frequency inverter is mounted in a vertical position on the assembly panel by means of the standard fittings. The following illustration shows the standard fitting.

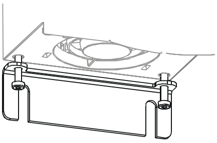
Standard installation



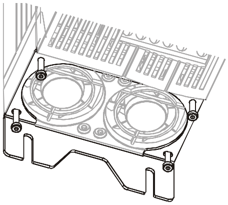


fixing bracket top
(fixing with screws **M4x20**)





fixing bracket bottom
(fixing with screws **M4x60**)



Assembly is done by screwing the two fixing brackets to the heat sink of the frequency inverter and the assembly panel.

The frequency inverters are provided with fixing brackets, which are fitted using four thread-cutting screws.

The dimensions of the device and the installation dimensions are those of the standard device without optional components and are given in millimeters.

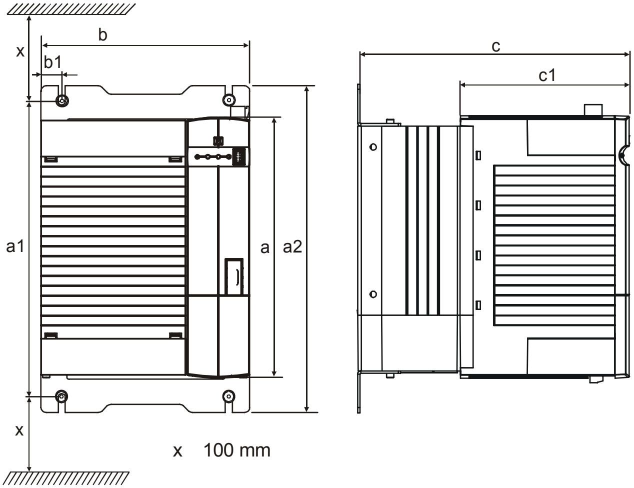
Dimensions in mm					**Installation dimensions in mm**			
Frequency inverter		a	b	c	a1	a2	b1	c1
ACT 201	**4.0 ... 5.5 kW**	250	100	200	270 ... 290	315	12	133
	7.5 ... 9.2 kW	250	125	200	270 ... 290	315	17.5	133
ACT 401	**5.5 ... 9.2 kW**	250	100	200	270 ... 290	315	12	133
	11.0 ... 15.0 kW	250	125	200	270 ... 290	315	17.5	133

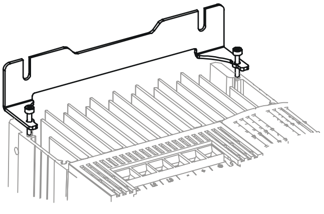
Caution! Mount the devices with sufficient clearance to other components so that the cooling air can circulate freely. Avoid soiling by grease and air pollution by dust, aggressive gases, etc.

4.3 ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW)

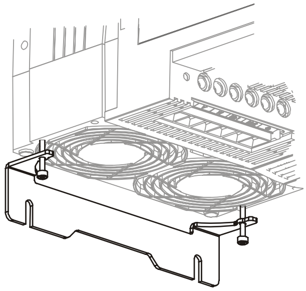
The frequency inverter is mounted in a vertical position on the assembly panel by means of the standard fittings. The following illustration shows the standard fitting.

Standard installation





fixing bracket top
(fixing with screws **M4x20**)



fixing bracket bottom
(fixing with screws **M4x70**)

Assembly is done by screwing the two fixing brackets to the heat sink of the frequency inverter and the assembly panel.
The frequency inverters are provided with fixing brackets, which are fitted using four thread-cutting screws. The dimensions of the device and the installation dimensions are those of the standard device without optional components and are given in millimeters.

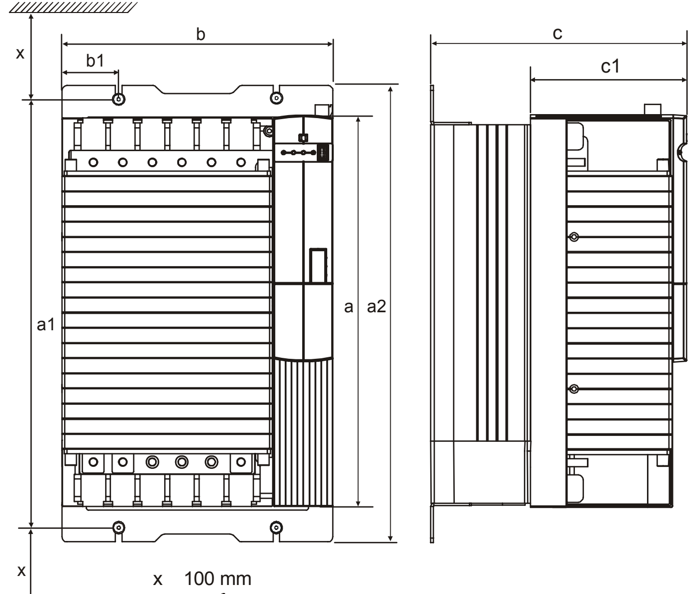
Dimensions in mm				Installation dimensions in mm			
Frequency inverter	a	b	c	a1	a2	b1	c1
18.5 kW ... 30.0 kW	250	200	260	270 … 290	315	20	160

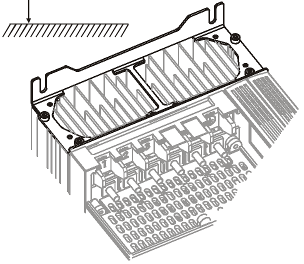
Caution! Mount the devices with sufficient clearance to other components so that the cooling air can circulate freely. Avoid soiling by grease and air pollution by dust, aggressive gases, etc.

4.4 ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW)

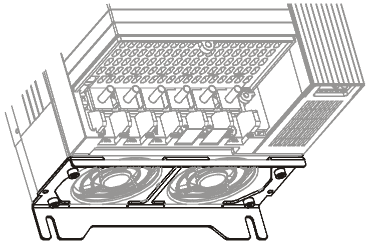
The frequency inverter is mounted in a vertical position on the assembly panel by means of the standard fittings. The following illustration shows the standard fitting.

Standard installation





fixing braket top
(fixing with screws **M5x20**)



fixing braket bottom
(fixing with screws **M5x20**)

Assembly is done by screwing the two fixing brackets to the heat sink of the frequency inverter and the assembly panel.
The frequency inverters are provided with fixing brackets, which are fitted using four thread-cutting screws. The dimensions of the device and the installation dimensions are those of the standard device without optional components and are given in millimeters.

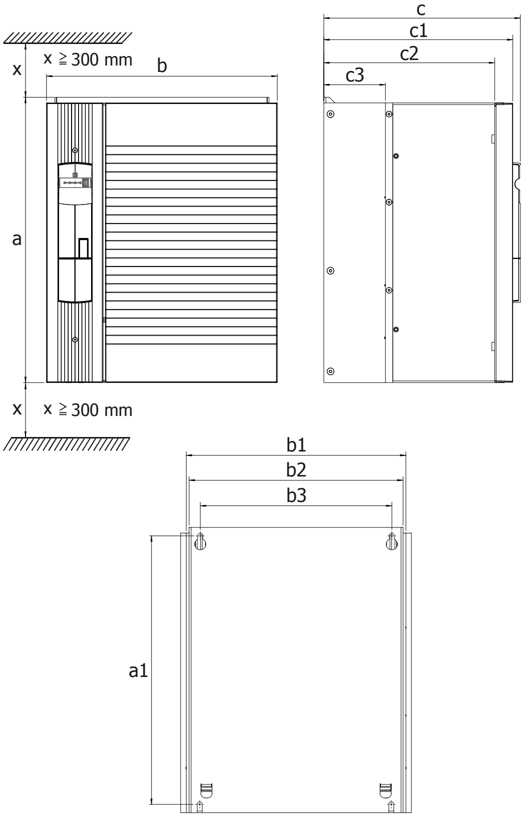
Dimensions in mm				Installation dimensions in mm			
Frequency inverter	a	b	c	a1	a2	b1	c1
37.0 kW ... 65.0 kW	400	275	260	425 .. 445	470	20	160

Caution! Mount the devices with sufficient clearance to other components so that the cooling air can circulate freely. Avoid soiling by grease and air pollution by dust, aggressive gases, etc.

4.5 ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW)

The frequency inverter is mounted in a vertical position on the assembly panel. The following illustration shows the standard fitting.

Standard installation



The diameter of the assembly holes is 9 mm.

Assembly is done by screwing the back plate of the frequency inverter to the assembly panel.
The dimensions of the device and the installation dimensions are those of the standard device without optional components and are given in millimeters.

Dimensions in mm				Installation dimensions in mm						
Frequency inverter	a	b	c	a1	b1	b2	b3	c1	c2	c3
75.0 ... 132.0 kW	510	412	351	480	392	382	342	338	305	110

Caution! Mount the devices with sufficient clearance to other components so that the cooling air can circulate freely. Avoid soiling by grease and air pollution by dust, aggressive gases, etc.

5 Electrical Installation

The electrical installation must be carried out by qualified staff according to the general and regional safety and installation directives. For a safe operation of the frequency inverter it is necessary that the documentation and the device specifications be complied with during installation and commissioning. In the case of special applications, you may also have to comply with further guidelines and instructions.

Danger! When the frequency inverter is disconnected from power supply, the mains, DC-link voltage and motor terminals may still be live for some time. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting to work at the unit.

The connecting cables must be protected externally, considering the maximum voltage and current values of the fuses. The mains fuses and cable cross-sections are to be selected according to EN 60204-1 and DIN VDE 0298 Part 4 for the nominal operating point of the frequency inverter. According to UL/CSA, the frequency inverter is suitable for operation at a supply network of a maximum of 480 VAC which delivers a maximum symmetrical current of 5000 A (effective value) if protected by fuses of class RK5. Only use copper cables with a temperature range of 60/75 °C.

Warning! The frequency inverters are to be grounded properly, i.e. large connection area and with good conductivity. The leakage current of the frequency inverters may be > 3.5 mA. According to EN 50178 a permanent connection must be provided. The protective conductor cross-section required for grounding the fixing plate must be at least 10 mm², or a second protective conductor must be installed electrically parallel to the first one. In these applications, the cross-section must correspond to the recommended cross-section of the wire.

Note: The degree of protection IP20 can only be reached if the terminals are fitted on the frequency inverter and the covers are properly mounted.

Connection conditions

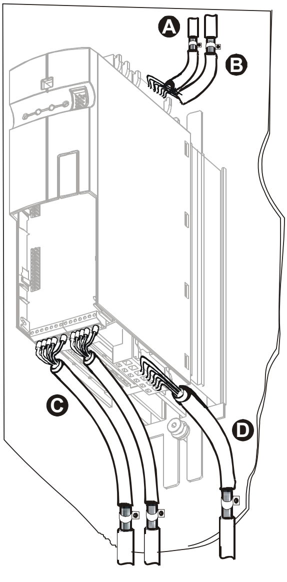
- The frequency inverter is suited for connection to the public or industrial supply mains according to the technical data. If the transformer output of the supply mains is ≤ 500 kVA, the optional mains commutation choke is only necessary for the frequency inverters identified in the technical data. The other frequency inverters are suitable for connection without a mains commutating choke with a relative mains impedance ≥ 1%.
- It must be checked, based on the specifications of EN 61000-3-2, if the devices can be connected to the public supply means without taking additional measures. The frequency inverters ≤ 9.2 kW with integrated EMC filter comply with the emission limits of the product standard EN 61800-3 up to a motor cable length of 10 m, without additional measures being required. Increased requirements in connection with the specific application of the frequency inverter are to be met by means of optional components. Commutating chokes and EMC filters are optionally available for the series of devices.
- Operation on unearthed mains (IT mains) is admissible after disconnection of the Y capacitors in the interior of the device.
- Interference-free operation with residual-current device is guaranteed at a tripping current ≥ 30 mA if the following points are observed:
  - Pulse-current and alternating-current sensitive residual current devices (Type A to EN 50178) in the case of a connection of frequency inverters with one-phase power supply (L1/N)
  - All-current sensitive residual current devices (Type B to EN 50178) in the case of a connection of frequency inverters with two-phase (L1/L2) or three-phase (L1/L2/L3) power supply.
  - Use EMC filters with reduced leakage current or, if possible, do not use EMC filters at all.
  - The length of the shielded motor cable is ≤ 10 m and there are no additional capacitive components between the mains or motor cables and PE.

5.1 EMC Information

The frequency inverters are designed according to the requirements and limit values of product norm EN 61800-3 with an interference immunity factor (EMI) for operation in industrial applications. Electromagnetic interference is to be avoided by expert installation and observation of the specific product information.

Measures

- Install the frequency inverters and commutating chokes on a metal mounting panel. Ideally, the mounting panel should be galvanized.
- Provide proper equipotential bonding within the system or the plant. Plant components such as control cabinets, control panels, machine frames, etc. must be connected by means of PE cables.
- Connect the frequency inverter, the commutating choke, external filters and other components to an earthing point via short cables.
- Keep the cables as short as possible, make sure that cables are installed properly using appropriate cable clamps, etc.
- Contactors, relays and solenoids in the electrical cabinet are to be provided with suitable interference suppression components.



Ⓐ Mains Connection

The length of the mains supply cable is not limited. However, it must be installed separate from the control, data and motor cables.

Ⓑ DC link connection

The frequency inverters are to be connected to the same mains potential or a common direct voltage source. Cables longer than 300 mm are to be shielded. The shield must be connected to the mounting panel on both sides.

Ⓒ Control Connection

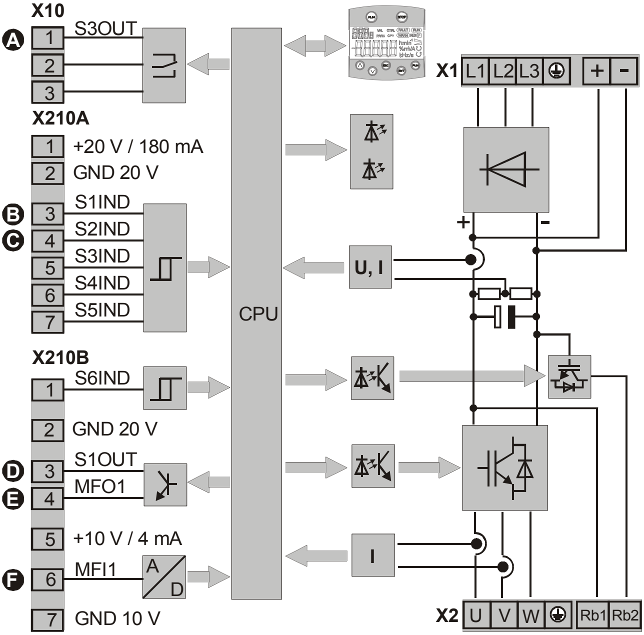
The control and signal cables must be kept physically separate from the power cables. The shield of the control cables is to be connected to ground potential properly, i.e. with good conductivity, on both sides. Analog signal lines are to be connected to the shield potential on one side.

Ⓓ Motor and brake resistor

The shield of the motor cable is to be connected to ground potential properly on both sides. On the motor side use a metal compression gland. On the frequency inverter side an appropriate shield clamp is to be used. The signal cable used for monitoring the motor temperature must be kept separate from the motor cable. Connect the shield of this line on both sides. If a brake resistor is used, the connection cable must also be shielded, and the shield is to be connected to earth potential on both sides.

Attention! The frequency inverters meet the requirements of the low-voltage directive 73/23/EEC and the requirements of the EMC directive 89/336/EEC. The EMC product standard EN 61800-3 relates to the drive system. The documentation provides information on how the applicable standards can be complied if the frequency inverter is a component of the drive system. The declaration of conformity is to be issued by the supplier of the drive system.

5.2 Block diagram


X10
A
1
2
3
S3OUT
X210A
1 +20 V / 180 mA
2 GND 20 V
B
C
3 S1IND
4 S2IND
5 S3IND
6 S4IND
7 S5IND
X210B
1 S6IND
2 GND 20 V
D
E
3 S1OUT
4 MFO1
5 +10 V / 4 mA
F
6 MFI1
7 GND 10 V
A
D
CPU
U, I
I
X1 L1 L2 L3 + -
+
-
X2 U V W Rb1 Rb2

Ⓐ Relay connection S3OUT
Change-over contact, min. 50000 switching operations, response time approx. 40 ms, maximum contact load:
- make contact AC 5 A / 240 V, DC 5 A (ohmic) / 24 V DC
- break contact AC 3 A / 240 V, DC 1 A (ohmic) / 24 V DC

Ⓑ Digital input S1IND
Digital signal, controller enable signal, response time approx. 16 ms (on), 10 µs (off), U_{max} = DC 30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, PLC compatible

Ⓒ Digital input S2IND ... S6IND
Digital signal: response time approx. 16 ms, U_{max}= DC 30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, PLC compatible, frequency signal: DC 0...30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, f_{max} = 150 kHz

Ⓓ Digital output S1OUT
Digital signal, DC 24 V, I_{max} = 40 mA,
PLC compatible, overload and short-circuit proof

Ⓔ Multi-function output MFO1
Analog signal: DC 24 V, I_{max} = 40 mA, pulse-width modulated, f_{PWM} = 116 Hz
Digital signal: DC 24 V, I_{max} = 40 mA,
frequency signal: DC 0...24 V, I_{max} = 40 mA, f_{max} = 150 kHz,
PLC compatible, overload and short-circuit proof

Ⓕ Multi-function input MFI1
Analog signal: resolution 12 Bit, DC 0...10 V (Ri = 70 kΩ), 0...20 mA (Ri = 500 Ω),
digital signal: response time approx. 16 ms, U_{max} = DC 30 V, 4 mA at DC 24 V,
PLC compatible

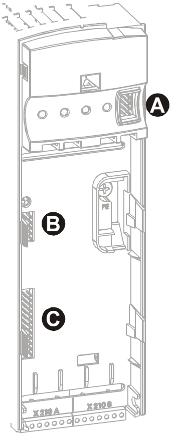
5.3 Optional Components

Thanks to the modular hardware components, the frequency inverters can be integrated in the automation concept easily. The standard and optional modules are recognized during the initialization, and the controller functionality is adjusted automatically. For the information required for installation and handling of the optional modules, refer to the corresponding documentation.

Danger! The hardware modules at slots B and C may only be assembled and disassembled after the frequency inverter has been disconnected safely from power supply. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting the work.

- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

Hardware modules



Ⓐ **Control Unit KP500**

Connection of the optional control unit KP500 or an interface adapter KP232.

Ⓑ **Communication module CM**

Plug-in section for connection to various communication protocols:

- CM-232: RS232 interface
- CM-485: RS485 interface
- CM-PDP: Profibus-DP interface
- CM-CAN: CANopen interface

Ⓒ **Expansion module EM**

Slot for customer-specific adaptation of the control inputs and outputs to various applications:

- EM-ENC: extended speed sensor evaluation
- EM-RES: resolver evaluation
- EM-IO: analog and digital inputs and outputs
- EM-SYS: system-bus
  (system bus in combination with CM-CAN communication module upon request)

Attention! If two optional components with CAN-Protocol controller are installed, the system-bus interface in the EM expansion module is deactivated!

5.4 Connection of the device

5.4.1 Dimensioning of the conductor cross section

Dimension the wire according to the electrical load and applied voltage. Use a suitable conductor cross section to reduce the voltage drop at the wire. The motor can not obtain the full torque if the voltage drop at the wire is too high. Comply to the country-specific and application-specific regulations and to the UL-Notes. Suitable fuse protection values for the mains connection are listed in the chapter "Technical data".

Dimension the conductor cross section of the protective conductor (PE) according to EN 61800-5-1:

Mains cable cross section	Protective conductor (PE)
Up to 10 mm²	Instal two protective conductors with the same conductor cross section as for the mains cable or 10 mm^2 conductor cross section.
10…16 mm²	Instal a protective conductor with the same conductor cross section as for the mains cable.
16…35 mm²	Instal a protective conductor with 16 mm² conductor cross section.
> 35 mm²	Instal a protective conductor with the half cross section of the mains cable cross section.

5.4.1.1 Typical conductor cross sections

The following tables give an overview with typical conductor cross sections (copper cable with PVC insulation, 30 °C ambient temperature, continuous mains current maximum 100% of rated mains current). Dependening on the operation conditions other conductor cross sections may be applicable.

230 V: one-phase (L/N) and two-phase (L1/L2) connection

ACT 201		Mains cable	PE-conductor	Motor cable
-05	*0.55 kW*	1.5 mm²	2x1.5 mm² or 1x10 mm²	1.5 mm²
-07	*0.75 kW*			
-09	*1.1 kW*			
-11	*1.5*	2.5 mm²	2x2.5 mm² or 1x10 mm²	1.5 mm²
-13	*2.2 kW*			
-15	*3 kW*			
-18	*4 kW*	4 mm²	2x4 mm² or 1x10 mm²	4 mm²

230 V: three-phase connection (L1/L2/L3)

ACT 201		Mains cable	PE-conductor	Motor cable
-05	*0.55 kW*	1.5 mm²	2x1.5 mm² or 1x10 mm²	1.5 mm²
-07	*0.75 kW*			
-09	*1.1 kW*			
-11	*1.5 kW*			
-13	*2.2 kW*			
-15	*3 kW*			
-18	*4 kW*	4 mm²	2x4 mm² or 1x10 mm²	4 mm²
-19	*5.5 kW*			
-21	*7.5 kW*	6 mm²	2x 6 mm² or 1x10 mm²	6 mm²
-22	*9.2 kW*	10 mm²	1x10 mm²	10 mm²

400 V: three-phase connection (L1/L2/L3)

ACT 401		Mains cable	PE-conductor	Motor cable
-05	*0.55 kW*	1.5 mm²	2x1.5 mm² or 1x10 mm²	1.5 mm²
-07	*0.75 kW*			
-09	*1.1 kW*			
-11	*1.5 kW*			
-12	*1.85 kW*			
-13	*2.2 kW*			
-15	*3 kW*			
-18	*4 kW*			
-19	*5.5 kW*	2.5 mm²	2x2.5 mm² or 1x10 mm²	2.5 mm²
-21	*7.5 kW*			
-22	*9.2 kW*	4 mm²	2x4 mm² or 1x10 mm²	4 mm²
-23	*11 kW*			
-25	*15 kW*	6 mm²	2x6 mm² or 1x10 mm²	6 mm²
-27	*18.5 kW*	10 mm²	1x10 mm²	10 mm²
-29	*22 kW*			
-31	*30 kW*	16 mm²	1x16 mm²	16 mm²
-33	*37 kW*	25 mm²	1x16 mm²	25 mm²
-35	*45 kW*	35 mm²	1x16 mm²	35 mm²
-37	*55 kW*			
-39	*65 kW*	50 mm²	1x25 mm²	50 mm²
-43	*75 kW*	70 mm²	1x35 mm²	70 mm²
-45	*90 kW*	95 mm²	1x50 mm²	95 mm²
-47	*110 kW*	2x70 mm²	1x70 mm²	2x70 mm²
-49	*132 kW*	2x95 mm²	1x95 mm²	2x95 mm²

5.4.2 Mains Connection

The mains fuses and cable cross-sections are to be selected according to EN 60204-1 and DIN VDE 0298 Part 4 for the nominal operating point of the frequency inverter. According to UL/CSA, approved Class 1 copper lines with a temperature range of 60/75°C and matching mains fuses are to be used for the power cables. The electrical installation is to be done according to the device specifications and the applicable standards and directives.

Caution! The control, mains and motor lines must be kept physically separate from one another. The cables connected to the frequency inverters may not be subjected to high-voltage insulation tests unless appropriate circuitry measures are taken before. Otherwise the unit may be damaged.

5.4.3 Motor connection

BONFIGLIOLI VECTRON recommends shielded cable for the motor connection to the frequency inverter. The shield is to be connected to PE potential properly, i.e. with good conductivity, on both sides. The control, mains and motor lines must be kept physically separate from one another. The user must comply with the applicable limits stipulated in the relevant national and international directives as regards the application, the length of the motor cable and the switching frequency.

5.4.3.1 Motor cable length, without filter

Permissible length of motor cable without output filter

Frequency inverter	unshielded cable	shielded cable
0.55 kW ... 1.5 kW	50 m	25 m
1.85 kW ... 4.0 kW	100 m	50 m
5.5 kW ... 9.2 kW	100 m	50 m
11.0 kW ... 15.0 kW	100 m	50 m
18.5 kW ... 30.0 kW	150 m	100 m
37.0 kW ... 65.0 kW	150 m	100 m
75.0 kW ... 132.0 kW	150 m	100 m

The specified lengths of the motor cables must not be exceeded if no output filter is installed.

Note: The frequency inverters ≤ 9.2 kW with integrated EMC filter comply with the emission limits stipulated in EN 61800-3 if the motor cable is not longer than 10 m. The frequency inverters ≤ 9.2 kW of the construction size 3 with integrated EMC filter comply with the emission limits stipulated in EN 61800-3 if the motor cable is not longer than 20 m Customer-specific requirements can be met by means of an optional filter.

5.4.3.2 Motor cable length, with output filter dU/dt

Longer motor cables can be used after taking appropriate technical measures, e.g. use of low-capacitance cables and output filters. The following table includes standard values if an output filter is used.

Permissible length of motor cable with output filter

Frequency inverter	unshielded cable	shielded cable
0.55 kW ... 1.5 kW	on inquiry	on inquiry
1.85 kW ... 4.0 kW	150 m	100 m
5.5 kW ... 9.2 kW	200 m	135 m
11.0 kW ... 15.0 kW	225 m	150 m
18.5 kW ... 30.0 kW	300 m	200 m
37.0 kW ... 65.0 kW	300 m	200 m
75.0 kW ... 132.0 kW	300 m	200 m

5.4.3.3 Motor cable length, with sine filter

Longer motor cables can be used if sine filters are installed. The high-frequency current components will be filtered out which results in smoothed current and allows longer motor cables. Take the voltage drop at the wire and the sine filter into account. The voltage drop causes an increase of the output current. Verify that the increased output current can be achieved by the frequency inverter. Consider this for the engineering.
If the motor cable is longer than 300 m please contact the BONFIGLIOLI service.

5.4.3.4 Group drive

For a group drive (several motors at one frequency inverter) the total length must be shared in the number of motors according to the table values. A group drive with synchronous servomotors is not possible.

Use a thermocouple for monitoring (for example PTC resistor) at each motor to avoid damage.

5.4.3.5 Speed sensor connection

Install the speed sensor lines physically separate from the motor cables. Comply with the manufacturer's data of the speed sensor.
Install the shielding near to the frequency inverter and keep the speed sensor lines as short as possible.

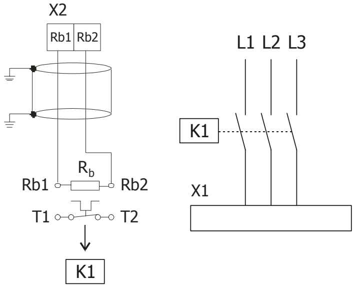
5.4.4 Connection of a Brake Resistor

The connection of a brake resistor is done via terminal **X2**.

Danger! **Switch off power supply** before connecting or disconnecting the brake resistor cables. Dangerous voltage may be present at the motor terminals and the terminals of the brake resistor even after the frequency inverter has been disconnected safely from power supply. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting to work at the unit.

- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

Caution! The brake resistor must be equipped with a temperature switch. The temperature switch must disconnect the frequency inverter from mains supply if the brake resistor is overloaded.



Note: Keep the brake resistor lines as short as possible.

5.5 Connection of the construction sizes

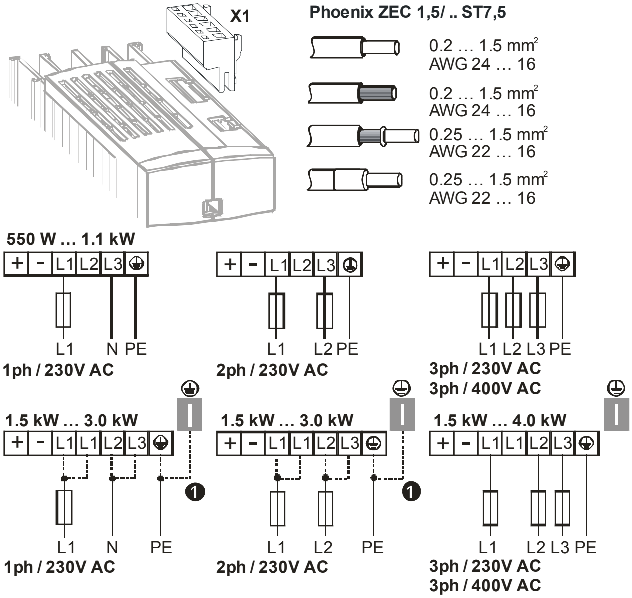
5.5.1 ACT 201 (up to 3.0 kW) and ACT 401 (up to 4.0 kW)

The mains connection of the frequency inverter is done via plug-in terminal **X1**. The connection of the motor and the brake resistor to the frequency inverter is done via plug-in terminal **X2**. Degree of protection IP20 (EN60529) is only guaranteed if the terminals are plugged in.

Danger! **Switch off power supply** before connecting or disconnecting the keyed plug-in terminals **X1** and **X2**. Dangerous voltage may be present at the mains terminals and the DC terminals even after the frequency inverter has been disconnected safely from power supply. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting the work.

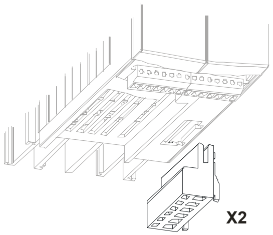
- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

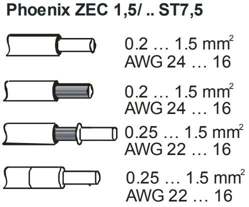
Mains power connection ACT 201 (up to 3.0 kW) and ACT 401 (up to 4.0 kW)

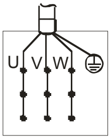

X1
Phoenix ZEC 1,5/ .. ST7,5
0.2 … 1.5 mm²
AWG 24 … 16
0.2 … 1.5 mm²
AWG 24 … 16
0.25 … 1.5 mm²
AWG 22 … 16
0.25 … 1.5 mm²
AWG 22 … 16
550 W … 1.1 kW
+ - L1 L2 L3
L1 N PE
1ph / 230V AC
+ - L1 L2 L3
L1 L2 PE
2ph / 230V AC
+ - L1 L2 L3
L1 L2 L3 PE
3ph / 230V AC
3ph / 400V AC
1.5 kW … 3.0 kW
+ - L1 L1 L2 L3
❶
L1 N PE
1ph / 230V AC
1.5 kW … 3.0 kW
+ - L1 L1 L2 L3
❶
L1 L2 PE
2ph / 230V AC
1.5 kW … 4.0 kW
+ - L1 L1 L2 L3
L1 L2 L3 PE
3ph / 230V AC
3ph / 400V AC

❶ With a mains current above 10 A, the mains power connection 230 V 1ph/N/PE and the mains power connection 230 V 2ph/N/PE are to be done on two terminals.

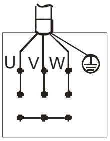
Motor power connection ACT 201 (up to 3.0 kW) and ACT 401 (up to 4.0 kW)



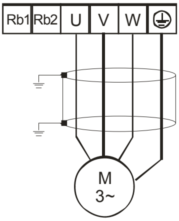

Phoenix ZEC 1,5/ .. ST7,5
0.2 … 1.5 mm^2
AWG 24 … 16
0.2 … 1.5 mm^2
AWG 24 … 16
0.25 … 1.5 mm^2
AWG 22 … 16
0.25 … 1.5 mm^2
AWG 22 … 16



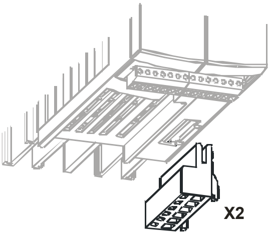
Delta connection

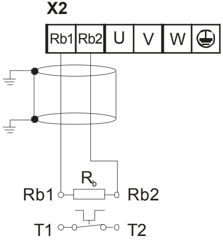


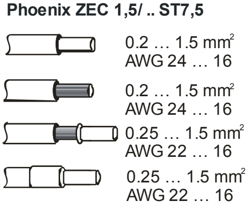
Star connection


Rb1
Rb2
U
V
W
M
3~

Connection of brake resistor with temperature switch




X2
Rb1
Rb2
U
V
W
R_b
Rb1
Rb2
T1
T2

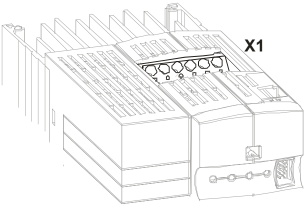

Phoenix ZEC 1,5/ .. ST7,5
0.2 … 1.5 mm^2
AWG 24 … 16
0.2 … 1.5 mm^2
AWG 24 … 16
0.25 … 1.5 mm^2
AWG 22 … 16
0.25 … 1.5 mm^2
AWG 22 … 16

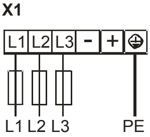
5.5.2 ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW) and ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW)

Danger! **Switch off power supply** before connecting or disconnecting the mains cable to terminal **X1** and the motor cable and the brake resistor to terminal **X2**. Dangerous voltage may be present at the mains terminals and the DC terminals even after the frequency inverter has been disconnected safely from power supply. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting the work.

- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

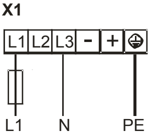
Mains power connection ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW) and ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW)




X1
L1
L2
L3
-
+
L1 L2 L3
PE

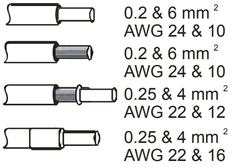
3ph / 230V AC
3ph / 400V AC

ACT 201-18 (4.0 kW):

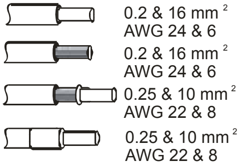

X1
L1
L2
L3
-
+
L1
N
PE

1ph / 230V AC

4.0 kW & 9.2 kW
6qmm / RM7,5

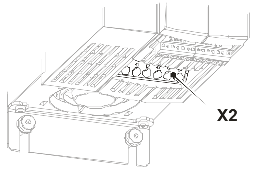

0.2 & 6 mm²
AWG 24 & 10
0.2 & 6 mm²
AWG 24 & 10
0.25 & 4 mm²
AWG 22 & 12
0.25 & 4 mm²
AWG 22 & 16

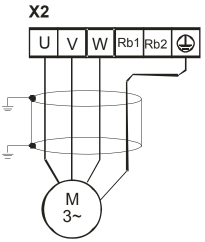
11 kW & 15 kW
16qmm / RM10+15

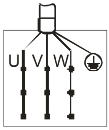

0.2 & 16 mm²
AWG 24 & 6
0.2 & 16 mm²
AWG 24 & 6
0.25 & 10 mm²
AWG 22 & 8
0.25 & 10 mm²
AWG 22 & 8

ACT 201-18 (4.0 kW): one- and three-phase connection is possible.
ACT 201-19 (5.5 kW) and above: three-phase connection is possible

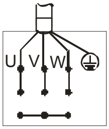
Motor power connection ACT 201 (4.0 up to 9.2 kW) and ACT 401 (5.5 up to 15.0 kW)





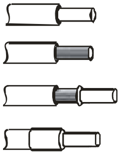


Delta connection



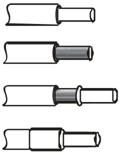
Star connection

4.0 kW … 9.2 kW
6qmm / RM7,5



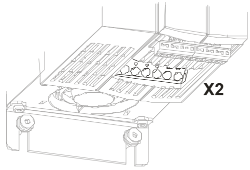
- 0.2 … 6 mm^2 AWG 24 … 10
- 0.2 … 6 mm^2 AWG 24 … 10
- 0.25 … 4 mm^2 AWG 22 … 12
- 0.25 … 4 mm^2 AWG 22 … 16

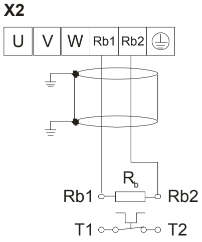
11.0 kW … 15.0 kW
16qmm / RM10+15



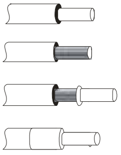
- 0.2 … 16 mm^2 AWG 24 … 6
- 0.2 … 16 mm^2 AWG 24 … 6
- 0.25 … 10 mm^2 AWG 22 … 8
- 0.25 … 10 mm^2 AWG 22 … 8

Connection of brake resistorwith temperature switch



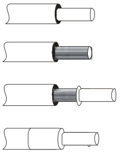


4.0 kW … 9.2 kW
6qmm / RM7,5



- 0.2 … 6 mm^2 AWG 24 … 10
- 0.2 … 6 mm^2 AWG 24 … 10
- 0.25 … 4 mm^2 AWG 22 … 12
- 0.25 … 4 mm^2 AWG 22 … 16

11.0 kW … 15.0 kW
16qmm / RM10+15



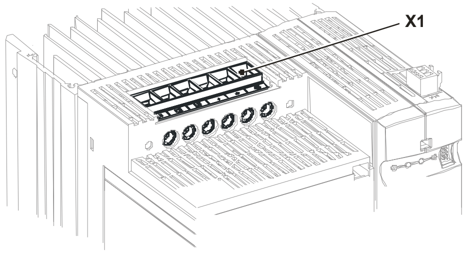
- 0.2 … 16 mm^2 AWG 24 … 6
- 0.2 … 16 mm^2 AWG 24 … 6
- 0.25 … 10 mm^2 AWG 22 … 8
- 0.25 … 10 mm^2 AWG 22 … 8

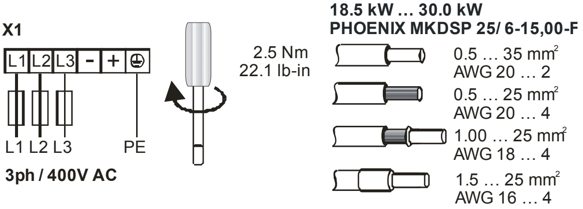
5.5.3 ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW)

Danger! **Switch off power supply** before connecting or disconnecting the mains cable to terminal **X1** and the motor cable and the brake resistor to terminal **X2**. Dangerous voltage may be present at the mains terminals and the DC terminals even after the frequency inverter has been disconnected safely from power supply. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting the work.

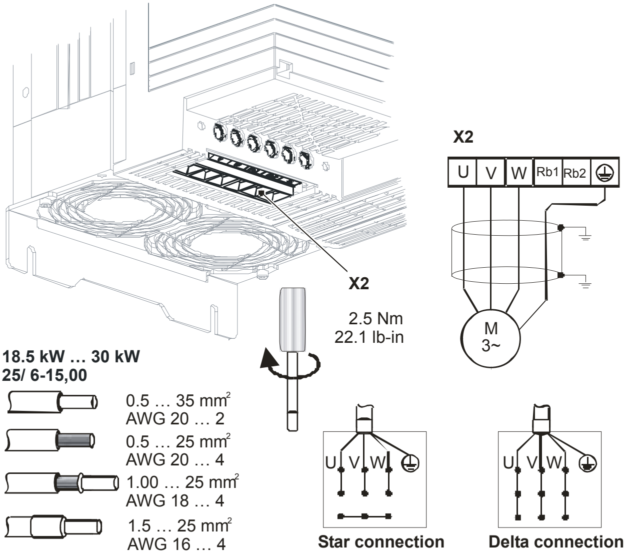
- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

Mains power connection ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW)

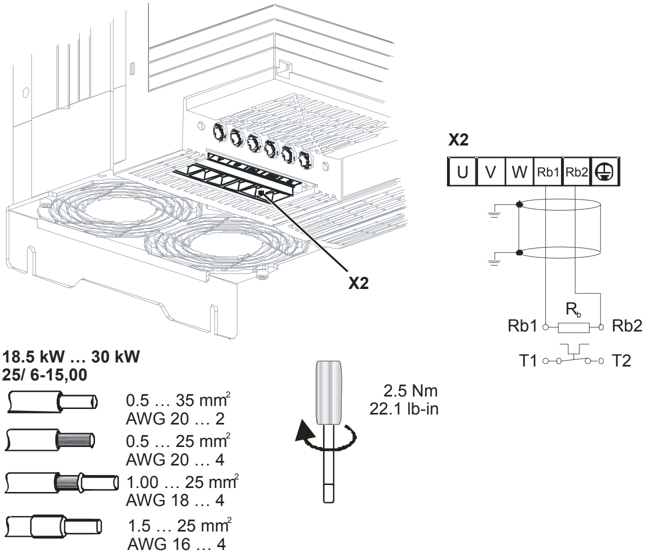



18.5 kW … 30.0 kW
PHOENIX MKDSP 25/ 6-15,00-F
X1
L1
L2
L3
-
+
L1 L2 L3
PE
3ph / 400V AC
2.5 Nm
22.1 lb-in
0.5 … 35 mm²
AWG 20 … 2
0.5 … 25 mm²
AWG 20 … 4
1.00 … 25 mm²
AWG 18 … 4
1.5 … 25 mm²
AWG 16 … 4

Motor power connection ACT 401 (18.5 up to 30.0 kW)


X2
2.5 Nm
22.1 lb-in
18.5 kW … 30 kW
25/ 6-15,00
0.5 … 35 mm²
AWG 20 … 2
0.5 … 25 mm²
AWG 20 … 4
1.00 … 25 mm²
AWG 18 … 4
1.5 … 25 mm²
AWG 16 … 4
X2
U
V
W
Rb1
Rb2
M
3~
U
V
W
Star connection
U
V
W
Delta connection

Connection of brake resistor with temperature switch

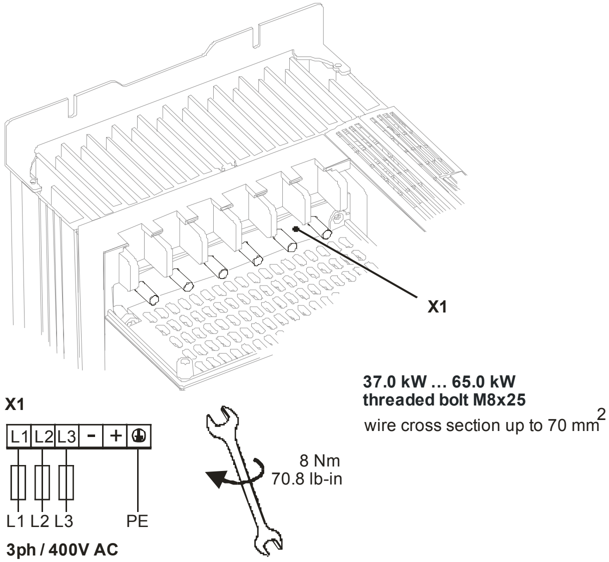

X2
18.5 kW … 30 kW
25/ 6-15,00
0.5 … 35 mm²
AWG 20 … 2
0.5 … 25 mm²
AWG 20 … 4
1.00 … 25 mm²
AWG 18 … 4
1.5 … 25 mm²
AWG 16 … 4
2.5 Nm
22.1 lb-in
X2
U
V
W
Rb1
Rb2
Rb
Rb1
Rb2
T1
T2

5.5.4 ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW)

Danger! **Switch off power supply** before connecting or disconnecting the mains cable to terminal **X1** and the motor cable and the brake resistor to terminal **X2**. Dangerous voltage may be present at the mains terminals and the DC terminals even after the frequency inverter has been disconnected safely from power supply. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting the work.

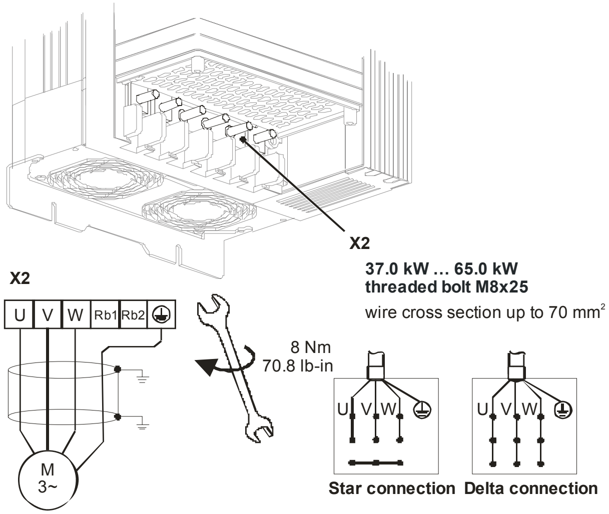
- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

Mains power connection ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW)



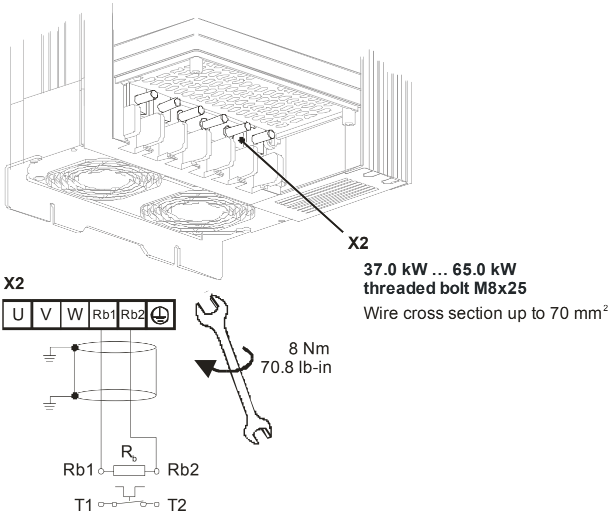
37.0 kW … 65.0 kW
threaded bolt M8x25
wire cross section up to 70 mm^2

Motor power connection ACT 401 (37.0 up to 65.0 kW)


X2
X2
U
V
W
Rb1
Rb2
M
3~
8 Nm
70.8 lb-in
U
V
W
Star connection
U
V
W
Delta connection

37.0 kW … 65.0 kW
threaded bolt M8x25
wire cross section up to 70 mm^2

Connection of brake resistor with temperature switch


X2
X2
U
V
W
Rb1
Rb2
8 Nm
70.8 lb-in
R_b
Rb1
Rb2
T1
T2

37.0 kW … 65.0 kW
threaded bolt M8x25
Wire cross section up to 70 mm^2

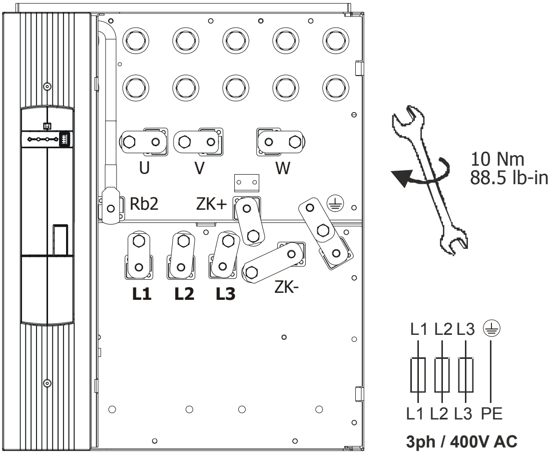
Note: Optional, the inverters in this size can be purchased without brake chopper. The terminals Rb1 and Rb2 are then not connected internally.

5.5.5 ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW)

Danger! **Switch off power supply** before connecting or disconnecting the mains cable, motor cable and the brake resistor. Dangerous voltage may be present at the mains terminals and the DC terminals even after the frequency inverter has been disconnected safely from power supply. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting the work.

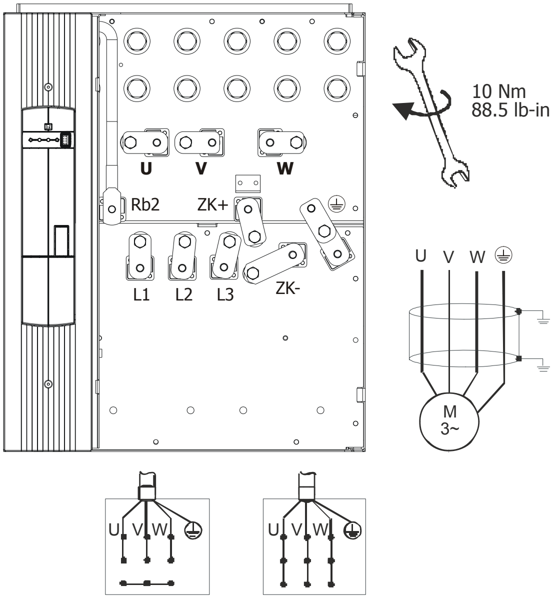
- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

Mains power connection ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW)



Threaded bolt M8x20

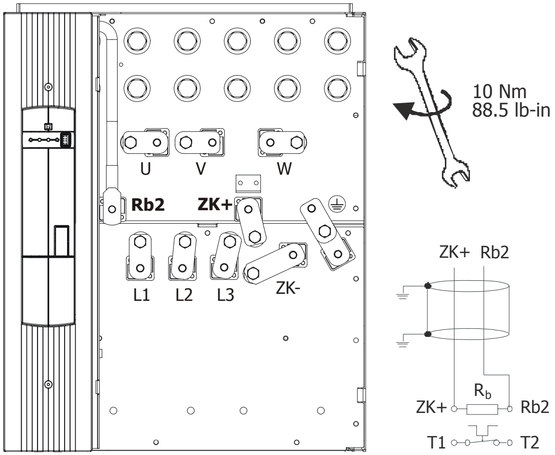
Motor power connection ACT 401 (75.0 up to 132.0 kW)


10 Nm
88.5 lb-in
U
V
W
Rb2
ZK+
L1
L2
L3
ZK-
U V W ⏚
M
3~
U V W ⏚
U V W ⏚

Star connection **Delta connection**

Threaded bolt M8x20

Connection of brake resistor with temperature switch


10 Nm
88.5 lb-in
U
V
W
Rb2
ZK+
L1
L2
L3
ZK-
ZK+ Rb2
R_b
ZK+
Rb2
T1
T2

Threaded bolt M8x20

Note: Optional, the inverters in this size can be purchased without brake chopper and are then not provided with the terminal Rb2 for a brake resistor connection.

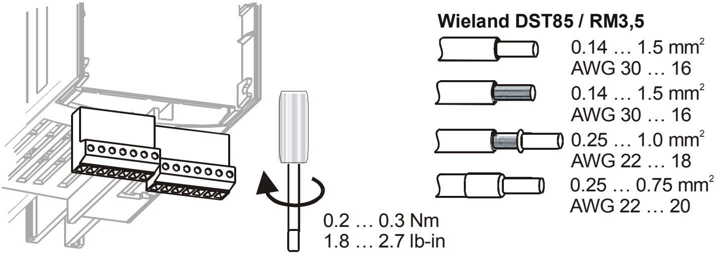
5.6 Control Terminals

The control and software functionality can be freely configured to ensure a reliable and economical operation. The operating instructions describe the factory settings of the standard connections in the relevant *Configuration* **30** as well as the software parameters to be set up.

Caution! Switch off power supply before connecting or disconnecting the keyed control inputs and outputs. Otherwise, components may be damaged.

- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

Control Terminals



Control terminal X210A

Ter.	Description
1	Voltage output 20 V, I_{max}=180 mA $^{1)}$
2	Ground / GND 20 V
3	Digital input S1IND, U_{max}= DC 30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, PLC compatible, response time approx. 16ms (on), 10 µs (off)
4	Digital input EM-S2IND, U_{max}= DC 30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, PLC compatible, response time approx. 16 ms
5	Digital input EM-S3IND, U_{max}= DC 30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, PLC compatible, response time approx. 16 ms
6	Digital input S4IND, U_{max} = DC 30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, PLC compatible, frequency signal: 0...30 V, 10 mA at 24 V, f_{max} = 150 kHz
7	Digital input S5IND, U_{max} = DC 30 V, 10 mA at DC 24 V, PLC compatible, frequency signal: 0...30 V, 10 mA at 24 V, f_{max} = 150 kHz

Control terminal X210B

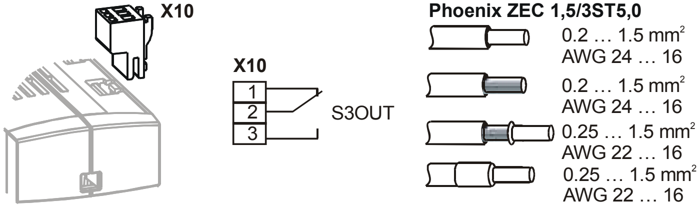
Ter.	Description
1	Digital input S6IND, U_{max}=30 V, 10 mA at 24 V, PLC compatible, response time approx. 16 ms
2	Ground / GND 20 V
3	Digital output S1OUT, U= DC 24 V, I_{max}=40 mA, overload and short-circuit proof
4	Multi-function output MFO1, analog signal: U= DC 24 V, I_{max}=40 mA, pulse-width modulated, f_{PWM}=116 Hz digital signal: U= DC 24 V, I_{max}=40 mA, overload and short-circuit proof, frequency signal: DC 0...24 V, I_{max}=40 mA, f_{max}=150 kHz
5	Reference output DC 10 V, I_{max}=4 mA
6	Multi-function input MFI1, analog signal: resolution 12 Bit, DC 0... 10 V (Ri=70 kΩ), 0...20 mA (Ri=500 Ω), digital signal: response time approx. 16 ms, U_{max}= DC 30 V, 4 mA at DC 24 V, PLC compatible
7	Ground / GND 10 V

1) The power supply at terminal X210A.1 may be loaded with a maximum current of I_{max} = 180 mA. The maximum current available is reduced by the digital output S1OUT and multifunctional output MFO1.

5.6.1 Relay Output

By default, the freely programmable relay output is linked to the monitoring function (factory setting). The logic link to various functions can be freely configured via the software parameters. Connection of the relay output is not absolutely necessary for the function of the frequency inverter.

Relay Output


X10
X10
1
2
3
S3OUT
Phoenix ZEC 1,5/3ST5,0
0.2 … 1.5 mm²
AWG 24 … 16
0.2 … 1.5 mm²
AWG 24 … 16
0.25 … 1.5 mm²
AWG 22 … 16
0.25 … 1.5 mm²
AWG 22 … 16

Control terminal X10

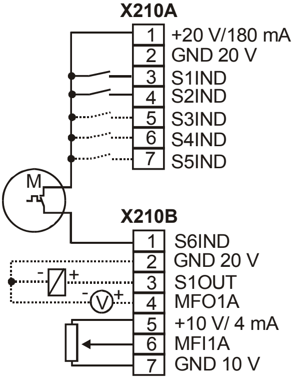
Ter.	Description
1 .. 3	Relay output, floating change-over contact, min. 50000 switching operations, response time approx. 40 ms, max. contact load, make contact AC 5 A / 240 V, DC 5 A (ohmic) / 24 V max. contact load, break contact AC 3 A / 240 V, DC 1 A (ohmic) / 24 V

5.6.2 Control Terminals – Terminal Diagram

The control hardware and the software of the frequency inverter are freely configurable to a great extent. Certain functions can be assigned to the control terminals, and the internal logic of the software modules can be freely selected.
Thanks to the modular design, the frequency inverter can be adapted to a great range of different driving tasks.
The demands made of the control hardware and software are well known in the case of standard driving tasks. This control terminal logic and internal function assignments of the software modules are available in standard configurations. These assignments can be selected via parameter *Configuration* **30**. For information on other configurations, please contact us.

5.6.2.1 Configuration 110 – Sensorless Control

Configuration 110 contains the functions for variable-speed control of a 3-phase machine in a wide range of standard applications. The motor speed is set according to the selected ratio of the reference frequency to the necessary voltage.

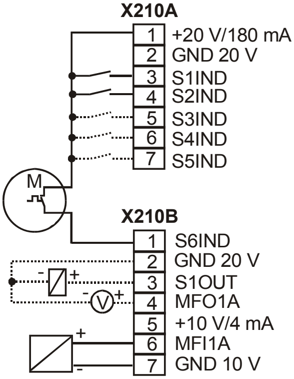


Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	Supply voltage +20 V
X210A.2	Ground 20 V
X210A.3	Controller release / error acknowledgment
X210A.4	Start of clockwise operation
X210A.5	Start of anticlockwise operation
X210A.6	Data set change-over 1
X210A.7	Data set change-over 2

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Motor thermal contact
X210B.2	Ground 20 V
X210B.3	Operating message
X210B.4	Analog signal of actual frequency
X210B.5	Supply voltage +10 V Reference value potentiometer
X210B.6	Reference speed 0 ...+10 V
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

5.6.2.2 Configuration 111 – Sensorless Control with Technology Controller

Configuration 111 extends the functionality of the sensorless control by software functions for easier adaptation to the customer's requirements in different applications. The Technology Controller enables flow rate, pressure, level or speed control.

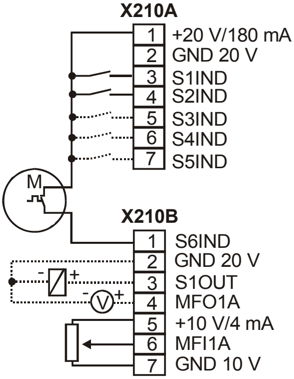

X210A
1 +20 V/180 mA
2 GND 20 V
3 S1IND
4 S2IND
5 S3IND
6 S4IND
7 S5IND
M
X210B
1 S6IND
2 GND 20 V
3 S1OUT
4 MFO1A
5 +10 V/4 mA
6 MFI1A
7 GND 10 V
-
+
V
+
-

Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	Supply voltage +20 V
X210A.2	Ground 20 V
X210A.3	Controller release / error acknowledgment
X210A.4	Fixed percentage value change-over 1
X210A.5	Fixed percentage value change-over 2
X210A.6	Data set change-over 1
X210A.7	Data set change-over 2

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Motor thermal contact
X210B.2	Ground 20 V
X210B.3	Operating message
X210B.4	Analog signal of actual frequency
X210B.5	Supply voltage +10 V
X210B.6	Actual percentage value 0 ...+10 V
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

5.6.2.3 Configuration 410 – Sensorless Field-Oriented Control

Configuration 410 contains the functions for sensorless, field-oriented control of a 3-phase machine. The current motor speed is determined from the present currents and voltages in combination with the machine parameters. Separate control of torque and flux-forming current enables a high drive dynamics at a high load moment.

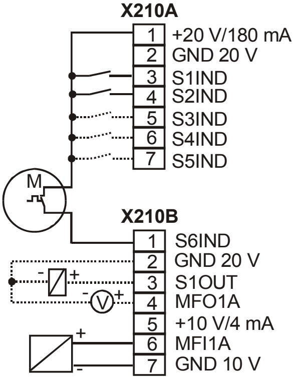

X210A
1 +20 V/180 mA
2 GND 20 V
3 S1IND
4 S2IND
5 S3IND
6 S4IND
7 S5IND
M
X210B
1 S6IND
2 GND 20 V
3 S1OUT
4 MFO1A
5 +10 V/4 mA
6 MFI1A
7 GND 10 V
-
+
V

Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	Supply voltage +20 V
X210A.2	Ground 20 V
X210A.3	Controller release / error acknowledgment
X210A.4	Start of clockwise operation
X210A.5	Start of anticlockwise operation
X210A.6	Data set change-over 1
X210A.7	Data set change-over 2

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Motor thermal contact
X210B.2	Ground 20 V
X210B.3	Operating message
X210B.4	Analog signal of actual frequency
X210B.5	Supply voltage +10 V Reference value potentiometer
X210B.6	Reference speed 0 ...+10 V
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

5.6.2.4 Configuration 411 – Sensorless Field-Oriented Control with Technology Controller

Configuration 411 extends the functionality of the sensor-less field-oriented control of Configuration 410 by a Technology Controller. The Technology Controller enables a control based on parameters such as flow rate, pressure, filling level or speed.

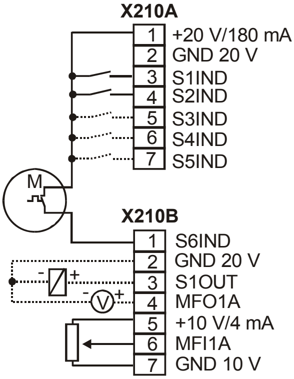

X210A
1 +20 V/180 mA
2 GND 20 V
3 S1IND
4 S2IND
5 S3IND
6 S4IND
7 S5IND
M
X210B
1 S6IND
2 GND 20 V
3 S1OUT
4 MFO1A
5 +10 V/4 mA
6 MFI1A
7 GND 10 V
V
+
-

Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	Supply voltage +20 V
X210A.2	Ground 20 V
X210A.3	Controller release / error acknowledgment
X210A.4	Fixed percentage value change-over 1
X210A.5	no function assigned
X210A.6	Data set change-over 1
X210A.7	Data set change-over 2

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Motor thermal contact
X210B.2	Ground 20 V
X210B.3	Operating message
X210B.4	Analog signal of actual frequency
X210B.5	Supply voltage +10 V
X210B.6	Actual percentage value 0 ...+10 V
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

5.6.2.5 Configuration 430 – Sensorless Field-Oriented Control, speed or torque controlled

Configuration 430 extends the functionality of the sensor-less field-oriented control of Configuration 410 by a Torque Controller. The reference torque is represented as a percentage and it is transmitted into the corresponding operational performance of the application. Change-over between variable-speed control and torque-dependent control is done via a digital control input.

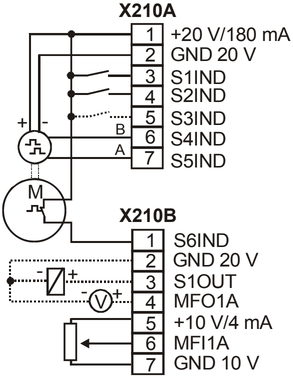

X210A
1 +20 V/180 mA
2 GND 20 V
3 S1IND
4 S2IND
5 S3IND
6 S4IND
7 S5IND
M
X210B
1 S6IND
2 GND 20 V
3 S1OUT
4 MFO1A
5 +10 V/4 mA
6 MFI1A
7 GND 10 V
V
+
-

Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	Supply voltage +20 V
X210A.2	Ground 20 V
X210A.3	Controller release / error acknowledgment
X210A.4	Start of clockwise operation
X210A.5	n-/T change-over control function
X210A.6	Data set change-over 1
X210A.7	Data set change-over 2

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Motor thermal contact
X210B.2	Ground 20 V
X210B.3	Operating message
X210B.4	Analog signal of actual frequency
X210B.5	Supply voltage +10 V Reference value potentiometer
X210B.6	Reference speed 0 ...+10 V
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

5.6.2.6 Configuration 210 – Field-Oriented Control, speed controlled

Configuration 210 contains the functions for speed-controlled, field-oriented control of a 3-phase machine with speed sensor feedback. The separate control of torque and flux-forming current enables high drive dynamics with a high load moment. The necessary speed sensor feedback results in a precise speed and torque performance.

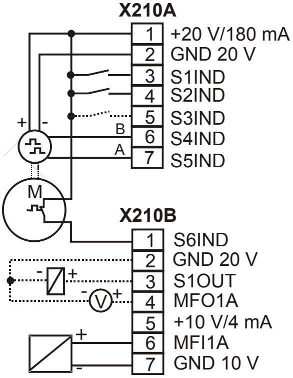

X210A
1 +20 V/180 mA
2 GND 20 V
3 S1IND
4 S2IND
5 S3IND
6 S4IND
7 S5IND
+
-
B
A
M
X210B
1 S6IND
2 GND 20 V
3 S1OUT
4 MFO1A
5 +10 V/4 mA
6 MFI1A
7 GND 10 V
-
+
V

Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	Supply voltage +20 V
X210A.2	Ground 20 V
X210A.3	Controller release / error acknowledgment
X210A.4	Start of clockwise operation
X210A.5	Start of anticlockwise operation
X210A.6	Speed sensor track B
X210A.7	Speed sensor track A

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Motor thermal contact
X210B.2	Ground 20 V
X210B.3	Operating message
X210B.4	Analog signal of actual frequency
X210B.5	Supply voltage +10 V Reference value potentiometer
X210B.6	Reference speed 0 ...+10 V
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

5.6.2.7 Configuration 211 – Field-Oriented Control, with Technology Controller

Configuration 211 extends the functionality of the speed-controlled, field-oriented control of Configuration 210 by a Technology Controller. The Technology Controller enables a control based on parameters such as flow rate, pressure, filling level or speed.

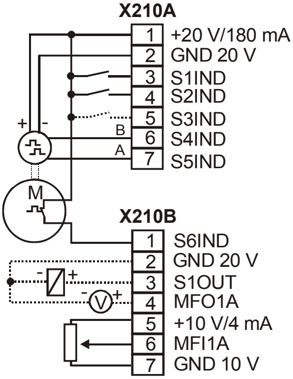

X210A
1 +20 V/180 mA
2 GND 20 V
3 S1IND
4 S2IND
5 S3IND
6 S4IND
7 S5IND
+
-
B
A
M
X210B
1 S6IND
2 GND 20 V
3 S1OUT
4 MFO1A
5 +10 V/4 mA
6 MFI1A
7 GND 10 V
-
+
V
+
-

Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	Supply voltage +20 V
X210A.2	Ground 20 V
X210A.3	Controller release / error acknowledgment
X210A.4	Fixed percentage value changeover 1
X210A.5	no function assigned
X210A.6	Speed sensor track B
X210A.7	Speed sensor track A

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Motor thermal contact
X210B.2	Ground 20 V
X210B.3	Operating message
X210B.4	Analog signal of actual frequency
X210B.5	Supply voltage +10 V
X210B.6	Actual percentage value 0 ...+10 V
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

5.6.2.8 Configuration 230 – Field-Oriented Control, speed and torque controlled

Configuration 230 extends the functionality of Configuration 210 by functions for torque-dependent, field-oriented control. The reference torque is represented as a percentage and it is transmitted into the corresponding operational performance of the application. Change-over between variable-speed control and torque-dependent control is done via a digital control input.

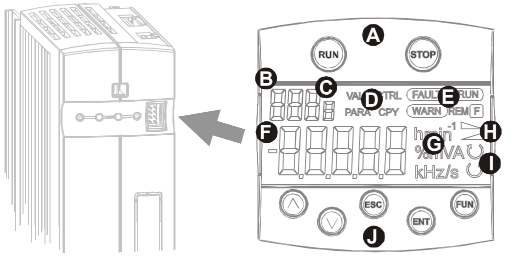

X210A
1 +20 V/180 mA
2 GND 20 V
3 S1IND
4 S2IND
5 S3IND
6 S4IND
7 S5IND
+
-
B
A
M
X210B
1 S6IND
2 GND 20 V
3 S1OUT
4 MFO1A
5 +10 V/4 mA
6 MFI1A
7 GND 10 V
V

Control terminal X210A	
X210A.1	Supply voltage +20 V
X210A.2	Ground 20 V
X210A.3	Controller release / error acknowledgment
X210A.4	Start of clockwise operation
X210A.5	n-/T change-over control function
X210A.6	Speed sensor track B
X210A.7	Speed sensor track A

Control terminal X210B	
X210B.1	Motor thermal contact
X210B.2	Ground 20 V
X210B.3	Operating message
X210B.4	Analog signal of actual frequency
X210B.5	Supply voltage +10 V Reference value potentiometer
X210B.6	Reference speed 0 ...+10 V
X210B.7	Ground 10 V

6 Control Unit KP500

The optional KP500 control unit is a practical tool for controlling the frequency inverter and setting and displaying the frequency inverter parameters.
The control unit is not absolutely necessary for the operation of the frequency inverter and can be plugged on when required.

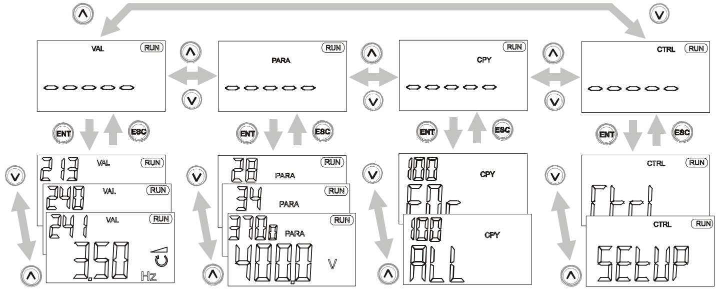


	Keys	
Ⓐ	RUN	Used for starting the drive and opening the CTRL menu. Press the RUN key to open the motor potentiometer function.
	STOP	Used for opening the CTRL menu, stopping the drive and acknowledging faults.
Ⓙ	▲ ▼	Used for navigating in the menu structure and selecting parameters. Used for increasing/decreasing parameter values.
	ENT	Accessing parameters or changing the menu within the menu structure. Confirmation of the selected function or the set parameter.
	ESC	Used for aborting parameters or switching back to the previous menu within the menu structure. Canceling the function or resetting the parameter value.
	FUN	Used for switching over the key function, access to special functions.

	Display	
Ⓑ	Three-digit 7-segment display to show the parameter number.	
Ⓒ	One-digit 7-segment display for display of the active data record, direction of rotation etc.	
Ⓓ	Display of the selected menu branch:	
	VAL	Display actual values.
	PARA	Select parameters and adjust parameter values.
	CTRL	Select a function for adjustment and/or display via the control unit: SEtUP guided commissioning. CtrL motor potentiometer and jog function.
	CPY	Copy parameters via the control unit: ALL All the parameter values are copied. Act Only the active parameter values are copied. FOr Control unit memory is formatted and deleted.
Ⓔ	Status and operating messages:	
	WARN	Warning about a critical operating behavior.
	FAULT	Message indicating that the unit was switched off due to a fault.
	RUN	Flashing: signals readiness for operation. Lights up: signals that the unit is operating and the output stage is enabled.
	REM	Active remote control via interface connection.
	F	Function switch-over with the FUN key.
Ⓕ	Five-digit 7-segment display for display of parameter value and sign.	
Ⓖ	Physical unit of the parameter value displayed.	
Ⓗ	Active acceleration or deceleration ramp.	
Ⓘ	Current direction of rotation of the drive.	

6.1 Menu Structure

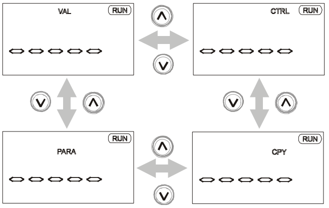
The menu structure of the control unit is arranged as shown in the following illustration. In the optionally available PC user software VPlus, the functions and parameters are structured in various levels depending on their function. The software contains the full set of information and enables a flexible use of the parameter setting and control options.



6.2 Main Menu

The various parameters and information of the frequency inverter can be displayed by means of the control unit. The different functions and parameters are grouped together in four menu branches. From any point in the menu structure you can return to the main menu by pressing the ESC key either continuously or repeatedly.

Note: In the following description of the key functions, a plus (+) between the key symbols indicates that the keys have to be pressed at the same time. A comma (,) between the key symbols indicates that the keys have to be pressed one after the other.



Menu branch VAL
Display of actual values

Menu branch PARA
Display and edit parameters

Menu branch CPY
Copy parameters

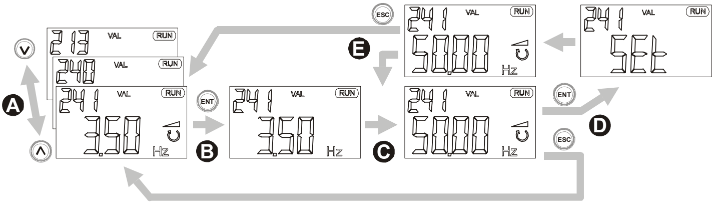
Menu branch CTRL
Select control and test functions

Use the arrow keys to select the required menu branch. The selected menu branch is displayed (flashing).
Select the menu branch by pressing the ENT key. The first parameter or the first function in the selected menu branch will be displayed.
Press the ESC key to return to the main menu of the control unit.

Keys	
▲ ▼	Navigate through the menu structure and select a menu branch.
ENT	Open the selected menu branch.
ESC	Cancel the current menu branch and return to the main menu.

6.3 Actual Value Menu (VAL)

In the VAL menu branch, the control unit displays a variety of actual values, depending on the configuration selected and the options installed. The parameters and basic software functions linked to the corresponding actual value are documented in the operating instructions.



A	Use the arrow keys to select the required number from the actual values displayed in numerical order. In the current record, the record-related actual value parameters are displayed, including the corresponding data record number. The seven-segment display shows data record 0 if the actual values in the four data sets are identical.	
	Keys	
	▲ + ▼	Display the actual value parameter upon switch-on.
	FUN , ▲	Display last actual value parameter (highest number).
	FUN , ▼	Display first actual value parameter (lowest number).

B	Use the ENT key to select the parameter. The parameter is displayed including its current value, unit and the active data record.

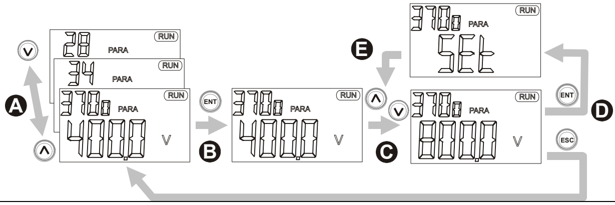
C	During commissioning, operation and error analysis, it is possible to monitor each actual value parameter specifically. Some of the actual value parameters are arranged in the four available data records. If the parameter values in the four data records are identical, the actual value is displayed in data record 0. If the actual values in the four data records are different, diFF is displayed in data record 0.	
	Keys	
	▲ , ▼	Switch to another of the data set in the case of related actual values.
	FUN , ▲	Determine minimum value and display it permanently.
	FUN , ▼	Determine maximum value and display it permanently.
	FUN , ENT	Display of mean value of the actual value during the monitoring period.

D	Use the ENT key to save the selected actual value as a parameter displayed at switch-on. The message SEt (with parameter number) is displayed for a short time. When the frequency inverter is switched on the next time, this actual value will be displayed automatically.

E	After saving the parameter, you can monitor and display the value again. Use the ESC key to switch to the parameter selection of the VAL menu branch.

6.4 Parameter Menu (PARA)

The parameters to be configured during the guided commissioning were selected from common applications and can be supplemented as required by further settings in the PARA menu branch. The parameters and basic software functions linked to the corresponding actual value are documented in the operating instructions.



Ⓐ	Use the arrow keys to select the required number from the parameters displayed in numerical order. The parameter number is displayed with the active data set (flashes). In the current data set, the related parameters are displayed, including the corresponding data set number. The seven-segment display shows data set 0 if the parameter values in the four data sets are identical.	
	Keys	
	▲ + ▼	Change to the last parameter edited.
	FUN , ▲	Display of last parameter (highest number).
	FUN , ▼	Display of first parameter (lowest number).

Ⓑ	Use the ENT key to select the parameter. The parameter is displayed including its value, unit and the active data set. If settings are edited in data set 0, the parameter values are changed in the four data sets.

Ⓒ	Use the arrow keys to adjust the parameter value or to select an operation mode. The adjustment possibilities you have depend on the parameter. Keep the arrow keys pressed for a while to change the displayed values quickly. If you release the keys again, the speed at which the values change is reduced again. If the parameter value starts to flash, the speed at which the values change is reset to the initial value again.	
	Keys	
	▲ + ▼	Set parameter to factory setting.
	FUN , ▲	Set parameter to highest value.
	FUN , ▼	Set parameter to smallest value.
	FUN , ENT	Change of the data set in the case of data set related parameters.

Ⓓ	Use the ENT key to save the parameter. For a short time, the message SEt including the parameter number and the data set is displayed. To leave the parameter unchanged, press the ESC key.	
	Messages	
	Err1: EEPrO	Parameter has not been saved.
	Err2: StOP	Parameter can only be read (i.e. not edited) when the unit is in operation.
	Err3: Error	Other error.

Ⓔ	After saving the parameter, you can edit the value again or return to the parameter selection menu by pressing the ESC key.

6.5 Copy Menu (CPY)

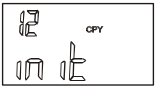
With the copy function of the control unit you can copy the parameter values from the frequency inverter to a non-volatile memory of the control unit (upload) and store (download) them to a frequency inverter again.

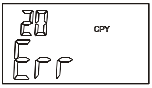
The copy function makes the parameterization of recurring applications much easier. The function archives all parameter values, regardless of access control and value range. The memory space available in the control unit for the files is dynamically scaled to match the scope of the data.

Note: The Copy Menu (CPY) is accessible in control level 3. The control level can be adjusted, if necessary, via parameter *Control Level* **28**.

6.5.1 Reading the Stored Information

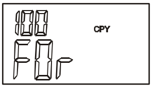
When you open the CPY menu branch, the data stored in the control unit are read out. This process takes a few seconds. During this time, **init** and a progress indicator are displayed. After the initialization in the copy menu, the function can be selected.
If the information stored in the control unit is not valid, the initialization is stopped and an error message is displayed.
In this case, the memory in the control unit must be formatted as follows:

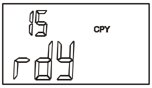




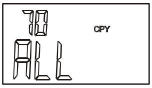
- Use the ENT key to confirm the error message.
- Use the arrow keys to select the function **FOr**.
- Use the ENT key to confirm the selection.
  During the formatting operation, **FCOPY** and a progress indicator are displayed.

  The process takes a few seconds. When the process is complete, the message **rdY** is displayed.
- Confirm the message by pressing the ENT key.





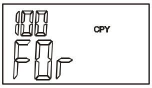
Now, you can select the copy function as described in the following.



6.5.2 Menu Structure

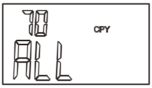
The copy menu CPY contains three main functions. Use the arrow keys to select the required function. Select the source and the destination for the process. The memory space available in the non-volatile memory of the control unit is displayed on the three-digit seven-segment display as a percentage value.

Function – FOr
Use the function **FOr** to format and delete the memory in the control unit. This may be necessary if a new control unit is used for the first time.



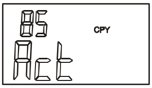
Function – ALL
All readable and writable parameter values are transferred.

- Confirm this selection by pressing the ENT key and continue by selecting the source.



Function – Act
Only the active parameter values of the frequency inverter are copied to the control unit. The number of active parameter values depends on the current selected configuration of the frequency inverter.
When data are copied from the control unit to the frequency inverter, all parameter values stored are transferred, like in the case of the ALL function.

- Confirm the selection **Act** by pressing the ENT key and continue by selecting the source.



6.5.3 Selecting the Source

The parameters of the ALL and Act sub-functions in the CPY menu branch can be parameterized to meet the requirements of the specific application.
The available memory space of the control unit is shown on the seven-segment display.

- Use the arrow keys to select the data source (Src.) for the copy operation (upload). You can use either the data sets of the frequency inverter (Src. x) or the files of the control unit (Src. Fy) as the data source.
- Confirm the selected data source by pressing the ENT key and continue by selecting the destination.

Display	Description
Src. 0	The data of the four data records of the frequency inverter are copied.
Src. 1	The data of data record 1 of the frequency inverter are copied.
Src. 2	The data of data record 2 of the frequency inverter are copied.
Src. 3	The data of data record 3 of the frequency inverter are copied.
Src. 4	The data of data record 4 of the frequency inverter are copied.
Src. E	An empty data record for deletion of a file in the control unit.
Src. F1	File 1 is transferred from the memory of the control unit. 1)
Src. F2	File 2 is transferred from the memory of the control unit. 1)
Src. F3	File 3 is transferred from the memory of the control unit. 1)
Src. F4	File 4 is transferred from the memory of the control unit. 1)
Src. F5	File 5 is transferred from the memory of the control unit. 1)
Src. F6	File 6 is transferred from the memory of the control unit. 1)
Src. F7	File 7 is transferred from the memory of the control unit. 1)
Src. F8	File 8 is transferred from the memory of the control unit. 1)

1) Empty files which are not filled with data yet cannot be used as signal sources. The control unit memory is managed dynamically (see Chapter "Copy Menu (CPY)")

6.5.4 Selecting the Destination

Select the destination (dSt.) of the copy operation (application-specific). The data source is transferred to the selected target (download).

- Use the arrow keys to select the destination (dSt.) for the copied data (download). Depending on the data source selected, either the data records of the frequency inverter (dSt. x) or empty files of the control unit (dSt. F y) can be used as the target.
- Confirm the selection by pressing the ENT key. The copy process is started and **COPY** is displayed.

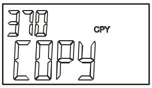
Display	Description
dSt. 0	The four data records of the frequency inverter are overwritten.
dSt. 1	The data are copied to data record 1 of the frequency inverter.
dSt. 2	The data are copied to data record 2 of the frequency inverter.
dSt. 3	The data are copied to data record 3 of the frequency inverter.
dSt. 4	The data are copied to data record 4 of the frequency inverter.
dSt. F1	The data are copied to file 1 of the control unit. 1)
dSt. F2	The data are copied to file 2 of the control unit. 1)
dSt. F3	The data are copied to file 3 of the control unit. 1)
dSt. F4	The data are copied to file 4 of the control unit. 1)
dSt. F5	The data are copied to file 5 of the control unit. 1)
dSt. F6	The data are copied to file 6 of the control unit. 1)
dSt. F7	The data are copied to file 7 of the control unit. 1)
dSt. F8	The data are copied to file 8 of the control unit. 1)

1) Already existing files are not offered as possible targets.

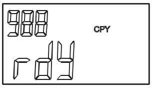
6.5.5 Copy Operation

Attention! Before the parameter settings are transferred to the frequency inverter, the individual parameter values are checked.
The value range and the parameter settings can differ according to the power range of the frequency inverter. If parameter values are outside of the value range, an error message will be displayed.

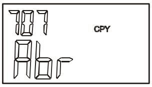
While the copy operation is in process, the message **COPY** and, as a progress indicator, the number of the currently copied parameter will be displayed.
In the case of the Act function, the active parameter values are copied only. Using the ALL function, parameters which are not relevant to the selected configuration are copied, too.



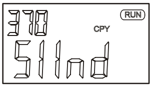
Depending on the selected copy function (ALL or Act), the copy operation is completed after some 100 seconds and the display reads **rdY**.
Press the ENT key to switch to the copy menu. Use the ESC key to switch to the target selection menu.



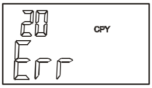
If the ESC key is pressed during the copy operation, the copy operation is aborted before the transmission of the data is complete. The message **Abr** and the number of the last parameter which was copied are displayed.
Press the ENT key to return to the selection in the copy menu. Use the ESC key to switch to the target selection menu.



6.5.6 Error Messages



The copy function archives all parameters, regardless of the access control and the value range. Some of the parameters are only writable if the frequency inverter is not in operation. The controller input (S1IND) may not be activated during the copy operation, otherwise the data transmission is aborted. The message **S1Ind** and the number of the last parameter which was copied are displayed. If the controller enable input is deactivated again, the aborted copy operation is continued.



The data transmission from the selected source to the destination is continuously monitored by the copy function. If an error occurs, the copy operation is aborted and the message **Err** and an error code are displayed.

Error Messages

Code		Meaning
0	1	Write error in memory of control unit; repeat the copy operation. If error message is displayed again, format the memory.
	2	Read error in memory of control unit; repeat the copy operation. If error message is displayed again, format the memory.
	3	The size of the memory of the control unit was not determined correctly. If this error occurs repeatedly, replace the control unit.
	4	Not enough memory; the data are incomplete. Delete the incomplete file and date no longer needed from the control unit.
	5	The communication has been disturbed or interrupted; repeat the copy operation, delete the incomplete file if necessary.
1	0	Invalid identification of a file in the control unit; delete faulty file and format memory if necessary.
	2	The memory space of the selected target file is occupied; delete file or use different target file in the control unit.
	3	The source file to be read in the control unit is empty; only files containing reasonable data should be selected as a source.
	4	Defective file in control unit; delete faulty file and format memory, if necessary.
2	0	The memory in the control unit is not formatted; format the memory via the FOr function in the copy menu.
3	0	Error during reading of a parameter from the frequency inverter; check connection between the control unit and the frequency inverter and repeat reading operation.
	1	Error during writing of a parameter in the frequency inverter; Check connection between the control unit and the frequency inverter and repeat the writing operation.
	2	Unknown parameter type; delete faulty file and format memory if necessary.
4	0	The communication has been disturbed or interrupted; repeat the copy operation, delete the incomplete file if necessary.

6.6 Read data from the KP 500 control unit

The Parameter transfer operation mode enables the transmission of data from the KP 500 control unit to the frequency inverter. In this operation mode, all functions of the control unit are disabled except for the COPY function. Data transmission from the frequency inverter to the control unit is also disabled.

Activation of the KP 500 control unit for Parameter transfer mode is prepared via the parameter *Program(ming)* **34**. For this purpose, the KP 500 control unit must be connected to the frequency inverter.

Program(ming) **34**	Function
111 - Parameter transfer	The KP 500 control unit is prepared for parameter transmission. A connected frequency inverter can receive data from the control unit.
110 - Normal mode	Reset the KP 500 control unit to standard mode.

Attention! The KP 500 control unit can be activated for Parameter transfer only if at least one file is stored in the control unit. Otherwise, the error message "**F0A10**" will be displayed**.**

6.6.1 Activating

The KP 500 control unit can be configured both via the keys of the KP 500 and via any other available CM communication module. To configure and activate the KP 500 control unit, proceed as follows:

Activation via keyboard of the control unit

- In the parameter menu PARA, use the arrow keys to select parameter *Program(ming)* **34** and confirm the selection by pressing the ENT key.
- Use the arrow keys to enter the value **111** – Parameter transfer and confirm your selection by pressing the ENT key.
  Now, the control unit is ready for activation.

Before data can be transferred, the control unit must be initialized.

- Disconnect the control unit from the frequency inverter and re-connect it to the same or another frequency inverter.
  The initialization operation is started. During the initialization, **init** and a progress indicator are displayed. After the initialization, the KP 500 control unit is ready for transferring data to the frequency inverter.

Note: Setting the parameter *Program(ing)* **34** to **111** – Parameter transfer can be undone by means of the control unit, provided that the control unit has not been initialized yet.

- In parameter *Program(ing)* **34**, use the arrow keys to enter the value **110** – Normal Mode and confirm by pressing the ENT key.

Activation via CM Communication Module

Attention! Activation of the control unit via a communication connection is only possible if the frequency inverter is equipped with an optional CM communication module and the communication is effected via this module. For this purpose, the control unit must be connected to the frequency inverter.

- Establish a communication connection to the frequency inverter.
- Start the communication and select parameter *Program(ing)* **34** via the communication interface.
- Via the communication interface, enter and confirm the value 111 in parameter *Program(ing)* **34**.
- Via the communication interface, enter and confirm the value 123 in parameter *Program(ing)* **34**.
  Frequency inverter is initialized again. The display of the control unit reads "rESEt". Then, the initialization operation is started.

6.6.2 Transfer data

In order to transmit a file from the control unit to the frequency inverter, proceed as follows:

- Connect the KP 500 control unit to the frequency inverter.
  After the initialization, the data sources which are available for download are displayed.
- Use the arrow keys to select the data source (Src.F.y) for the copy operation from the control unit to the frequency inverter.
  The files stored in the control unit can be used as data sources.

  Note: The files stored in the control unit contain all information and parameters stored in the control unit according to the selected copy function ALL or Act (see Chapter "Copy Menu (CPY)").
- Confirm the selection by pressing the ENT key.
  The copy operation is started. The message **COPY** and the number of the currently processed parameter will be displayed to indicate the progress of the operation.

After the copy operation is complete, the control unit is initialized again.

6.6.3 Reset to Normal Mode

A KP 500 control unit which was activated as a Download Keypad can be reset to standard operation mode with full functionality via a special key sequence on the control unit or via any available CM communication module.

Resetting at control unit

- Press the control unit keys RUN and STOP at the same time for about 1 second.
  The display shows **– – – – – .** Subsequent the topmost operation level of the control unit display is available.

- In the parameter menu PARA, use the arrow keys to select parameter *Program(ming)* **34** and confirm the selection by pressing the ENT key.
- Use the arrow keys to enter the value **110** – Normal Mode and confirm your selection by pressing the ENT key.
- Disconnect the control unit from the frequency inverter and re-connect it.
  After the initialization, the control unit is ready for operation with its full functionality.

Resetting via CM communication module and/or control software VPlus

Attention! Resetting the control unit via a communication connection is only possible if the frequency inverter is equipped with an optional CM communication module and the communication is effected via this module.

- Establish a communication connection to the frequency inverter.
- Start the communication and select parameter *Program(ing)* **34** via the communication connection.
- Via the communication connection, enter and confirm the value 110 in parameter *Program(ing)* **34**.
- Via the communication connection, enter and confirm the value 123 in parameter *Program(ing)* **34**.
  The frequency inverter is reset. The display of the control unit reads "rESEt".
  After reset, the control unit is ready for operation with its full functionality.

6.7 Control Menu (CTRL)

Note: In order to be able to control the drive via the control unit, the digital controller input S1IND must be connected and set to "High-Signal" in order to enable the output stage.

Warning!

- Switch off power supply before connecting and disconnecting control terminal S1IND.
- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.
- When the frequency inverter is disconnected from power supply, the mains, DC-link voltage and motor terminals may still be live for some time. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting to work at the unit.

The frequency inverters can be controlled by means of the control unit and/or a communication module. In the CTRL menu branch, various functions are available which make commissioning easier and enable the control of the inverter via the control unit.

If you want to control the frequency inverter via an optional communication module, the necessary adjustments can be made via parameter *Local/Remote* **412**. Via this parameter, you can specify which functions will be available to the controller. Depending on the operation mode selected, only some of the control menu functions are available. Refer to Chapter "Bus controller" for a detailed description of the parameter *Local/Remote* **412**.

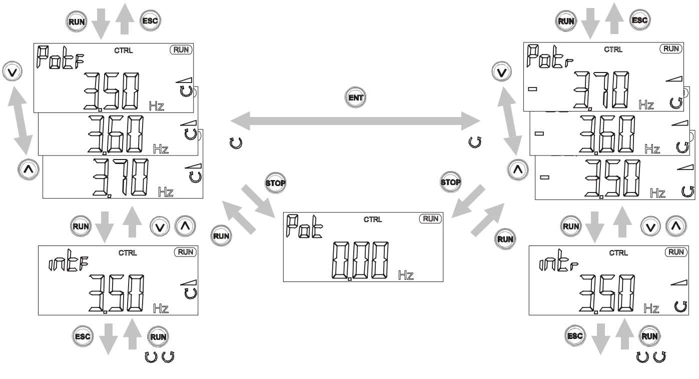
6.8 Controlling the Motor via the Control Unit

The control unit enables controlling the connected motor in accordance with the selected operation mode of parameter *Local/Remote* **412**.

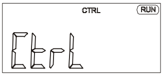
Note: In order to be able to control the drive via the control unit, the digital controller input S1IND (controller release) must be connected and set to "High-Signal" in order to enable the output stage.

Warning!

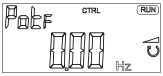
- Switch off power supply before connecting and disconnecting control terminal S1IND.
- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.
- When the frequency inverter is disconnected from power supply, the mains, DC-link voltage and motor terminals may still be live for some time. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting to work at the unit.



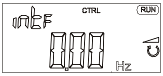
↻↺: When the RUN key was pressed, the drive was in operation already.

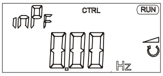


The CTRL menu branch can be accessed via the navigation within the menu structure. The CtrL function contains sub-functions which are displayed according to the operating point of the frequency inverter.

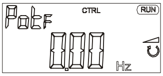


Press the RUN key anywhere within the menu structure to access the motor potentiometer function **PotF**. for clockwise operation or **Potr** for anti-clockwise operation directly.

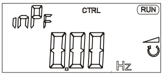




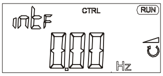
If the drive is running already, the display reads **intF** (foward, clockwise operation) / **intr** (reverse, anti-clockwise operation) for the function internal reference value or **inPF** (forward, clockwise operation) / **inPr** (reverse, anti-clockwise operation) for the function "Motorpoti (KP)".
The function Motorpoti (KP) enables a link to other reference value sources in the frequency reference value channel. The function is described in Chapter "Motorpoti (KP)".



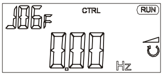
Motor potentiometer function **Pot**
Use the arrow keys to adjust the output frequency of the frequency inverter from the *minimum frequency* **418** to the *maximum frequency* **419**. The acceleration corresponds to the factory settings (2 Hz/s) for parameter *Ramp Keypad-Motorpoti* **473.** The parameters *Acceleration (Clockwise)* **420** and *Deceleration (Clockwise)* **421** are considered in the case of low acceleration values.



Function Motorpoti (KP) **inP**
Use the arrow keys to adjust the output frequency of the frequency inverter from the *Minimum Frequency* **418** to the *Maximum Frequency* **419**. The adjusted frequency value by means of the control unit can be connected with further reference values via *Reference Frequency Source* **475**. (Refer to chapter "Frequency Reference Channel" and "Motorpoti (KP)".)



Internal reference value **int**
The drive is in operation, i.e. output signals are present at the frequency inverter and the current actual value is displayed. Press an arrow key to switch to the motor potentiometer function **Pot**. The current frequency value is taken over in the motor potentiometer function **Pot**.



JOG frequency **JOG**
This function is useful for manual setup and positioning of a machine. The frequency of the output signal is set to the entered value if the FUN key is pressed.

- Press FUN key to switch from the internal reference value **int** or the motor potentiometer function **Pot** to the parameter *JOG frequency* **489**.
- Keep the FUN key pressed and press the arrow keys to adjust the required frequency.
- (The frequency value last adjusted is saved as the *JOG frequency 489*.)
- Release the FUN key to stop the drive.
- (The display returns to the previous function **Pot** or **int** or to **inP** if function "Motorpoti (KP)" is active.)

Key functions	
ENT	Reversal of the direction of rotation independent of the control signal on the terminals Clockwise S2IND or Anticlockwise S3IND.
ESC	Cancel function and return to the menu structure.
FUN	Switch from internal set point **int** or rather motor potentiometer function **Pot** to JOG frequency; the drive starts. Release the key to switch to the sub-function and stop the drive.
RUN	Start drive; alternative to control signal S2IND or S3IND.
STOP	Stop drive; alternative to control signal S2IND or S3IND.

Attention! If you press the ENT key, the **direction of rotation is changed** independent of the signal on the terminals Clockwise S2IND or Anticlockwise S3IND.

If the *minimum frequency* **418** has been set to 0.00 Hz, the **direction of rotation** of the motor changes as soon as the sign of the reference frequency value changes.

7 Commissioning of the Frequency Inverter

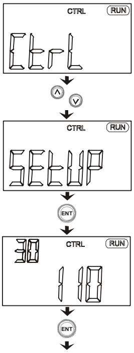
7.1 Switching on Mains Voltage

After completion of the installation work, make sure to check all control and power connections again before switching on the mains voltage. If all electrical connections are correct, make sure that the frequency inverter is not enabled (control input S1IND open). After power-up, the frequency inverter carries out a self-test and the relay output (X10) reports "Fault".
After a few seconds, the self-test is complete, the relay (X10) picks up and signals "no fault ".
If the unit is in "as-delivered" condition or after resetting the unit to the factory settings, the guided commissioning procedure is started automatically. On the control unit, the "SetUP" menu from the menu branch CTRL is displayed.

7.2 Setup Using the Control Unit

The guided commissioning of the frequency inverter determines all parameter settings relevant to the required application. The available parameters were selected based on known standard drive applications. This facilitates the selection of the important parameters. After successful completion of the SETUP routine, the actual value *Actual frequency* **241** from the VAL menu branch is displayed on the control unit. Now, the user should check whether further parameters are relevant for the application.

Note: The guided commissioning contains the function for parameter identification. The parameters are determined by way of measurement and set accordingly. In the case of higher requirements as regards the accuracy of the speed/torque control, you should carry out the guided commissioning procedure once again **under operating conditions** because part of the machine data depends on the operating temperature.



When the unit is in "as-delivered" condition, the guided commissioning procedure is started automatically. After successful commissioning, the guided commissioning can be carried out again later via the sub-menu CTRL.

- Use the ENT key to switch to the CTRL sub-menu.
- In the CTRL sub-menu, select the menu item "SEtUP" and confirm by pressing the ENT key.
- Use the ENT key to select parameter *Configuration* **30**.

The available configurations are displayed automatically depending on the selected *Control level* **28**.

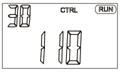
- Use the arrow keys to enter the number of the required configuration. (for a description of the configurations, refer to the following chapter)

If the setup was changed, the hardware and software functionality will be configured. The message "SEtUP" is displayed again.
Confirm this message by pressing the ENT key in order to continue the commissioning procedure.

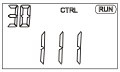
- Switch to the next parameter.
- After initialization, confirm the selected configuration by pressing the ENT key.
- Continue the guided commissioning procedure according to the following chapters.

7.2.1 Configuration

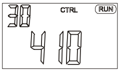
Parameter *Configuration* **30** determines the assignment and basic function of the control inputs and outputs as well as the software functions. The software of the frequency inverter offers several configuration options. These differ with respect to the way in which the drive is controlled. Analog and digital inputs can be combined and complemented by optional communication protocols as further reference value sources. The operating instructions describe the configurations and the relevant parameters in the third *Control level* **28** (adjustment of parameter *Control level* **28** to value 3).



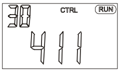
Configuration 110, sensorless control
Configuration 110 contains the functions for variable-speed control of a 3-phase machine in a wide range of standard applications. The motor speed is set according to the V/f characteristic in accordance with the voltage/frequency ratio.



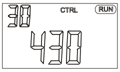
Configuration 111, sensorless control with technology controller
Configuration 111 extends the functionality of the sensor-less control by software functions for easier adaptation to the customer's requirements in different applications. The Technology Controller enables flow rate, pressure, level or speed control.



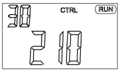
Configuration 410, sensorless field-oriented control
Configuration 410 contains functions for sensor-less, field-oriented control of a 3-phase machine. The current motor speed is determined from the present currents and voltages in combination with the machine parameters. In this configuration, parallel connection of several 3-phase motors is possible to a limited extent only.



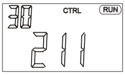
**Configuration 411, sensorless field-oriented control
with Technology Controller**
Configuration 411 extends the functionality of Configuration 410 by a Technology Controller. The Technology Controller enables a control based on parameters such as flow rate, pressure, filling level or speed.



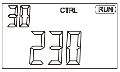
**Configuration 430, sensorless field-oriented control
with speed/torque control**
Configuration 430 extends the functionality of Configuration 410 by functions for torque-dependent, field-oriented control. The reference torque is represented as a percentage and it is transmitted into the corresponding operational performance of the application. Change-over between variable-speed control and torque-dependent control is done via a digital control input.



Configuration 210, field-oriented control
Configuration 210 contains the functions for speed-controlled, field-oriented control of a 3-phase machine with speed sensor feedback. The separate control of torque and flux-forming current enables high drive dynamics with a high load moment. The necessary speed sensor feedback results in a precise speed and torque performance.

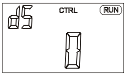


Configuration 211, field-oriented control with technology controller
Configuration 211 extends the functionality of Configuration 210 by a Technology Controller. The Technology Controller enables a control based on parameters such as flow rate, pressure, filling level or speed.



Configuration 230, field-orientated control with speed/torque control
Configuration 230 extends the functionality of Configuration 210 by functions for torque-dependent, field-oriented control. The reference torque is represented as a percentage and it is transmitted into the corresponding operational performance of the application. Change-over between variable-speed control and torque-dependent control is done via a digital control input.

7.2.2 Data Set

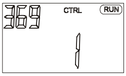


The data set change-over function enables the selection of one of four data sets for storing parameter settings.
If data set 0 is selected (factory setting), the parameter values stored in data set 0 are copied to data sets 1 through 4. In this way, all values determined during the guided commissioning procedure are saved in all data sets. In the factory settings, the frequency inverter uses data set 1 as the active data set. (For information on data set change-over via logic signals, refer to the chapter "Data Set Change-Over").
For example, if data set 2 is selected for guided commissioning ("SETUP"), all values which were determined or entered are saved in this data set. In this case, the other data sets do not contain any defined values. For the operation of the frequency inverter, data set 2 must be selected as the active data set in this case.

Data Set Setup

dS	**Function**
0	All data sets (DS0)
1	Data set 1 (DS1)
2	Data set 2 (DS2)
3	Data set 3 (DS3)
4	Data set 4 (DS4)

7.2.3 Motor Type



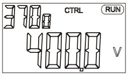
The properties of the control functions and methods to be set vary depending on the motor which is connected. The parameter *Motor type* **369** offers a range of motor variants with the corresponding table values. The verification of the entered rated values and the guided commissioning are carried out on the basis of the parameterized motor type. The selection of motor types varies depending on the requirements of the different control methods. In operating instructions the functionality and operating performance are described for 3-phase motors.

Motor type **369**	**Function**
0 - Unknown	The motor is not a standard type.
1 - Asynchronous	Three-phase asynchronous motor, squirrel cage.
2 - Synchronous	Three-phase synchronous motor.
3 - Reluctance	Three-phase reluctance motor.
10 - Transformer	Transformer with three primary windings.

Caution! Polling and presetting of parameter values depends on the operation mode selected for parameter *Motor type* **369.**
If the motor type is not entered correctly, the drive may be damaged.

When the motor type is specified, the machine data must be entered. This is described in the following chapter. The data are polled in accordance with the table below.

7.2.4 Machine Data



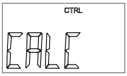
The machine data to be entered during the guided commissioning procedure are indicated on the type plate or the data sheet of the motor. The factory settings of the machine parameters are based on the nominal data of the frequency inverter and the corresponding four-pole three-phase motor. The entered and calculated machine data are checked for plausibility during the guided commissioning procedure. The user should verify the factory-set rated data of the three-phase motor.
U_{FIN}, I_{FIN}, P_{FIN} are rated values of the frequency inverter.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
370	Rated Voltage	$0.17 \cdot U_{FIN}$	$2 \cdot U_{FIN}$	U_{FIN}
371	Rated Current	$0.01 \cdot I_{FIN}$	$10 \cdot o \cdot I_{FIN}$	I_{FIN}
372	Rated Speed	96 min^{-1}	60 000 min^{-1}	n_N
374	Rated Cosinus Phi	0.01	1.00	$\cos(\varphi)_N$
375	Rated Frequency	10.00 Hz	1000.00 Hz	50.00
376	Rated mechanical power	$0.01 \cdot P_{FIN}$	$10 \cdot P_{FIN}$	P_{FIN}

- Use the arrow keys to select the required parameter and edit the parameter value.
- Use the ENT key to confirm the selected parameter and the parameter values entered.

Attention! The rated data of the motor are to be entered according to the specifications on the rating plate for the motor connection type used (star or delta connection). If the data entered deviate from the rating plate, the parameters will not be identified correctly. Parameterize the rated data according to the specifications for the motor winding connection indicated on the rating plate. Take the higher rated current of the connected asynchronous motor into account.

7.2.5 Plausibility check



After the machine data (and the speed sensor data, if applicable) have been entered, the calculation or examination of the parameters is started automatically. The display changes over to "CALC" for a short time. If the verification of the machine data is successful, the guided commissioning procedure continues with the identification of the parameters.
Verification of the machine data should only be skipped by experienced users. The configurations contain complex control processes which depend to a large degree on the correctness of the machine parameters entered.

The warning and error messages displayed during the verification process have to be observed. If a critical condition is detected during the guided commissioning, it is displayed by the control unit. Depending on the deviation from the expected parameter value, either a warning or an error message is displayed.

- To ignore the warning or error messages, press the ENT key. The guided commissioning is continued. However, it is recommended that the data be checked and corrected if necessary.
- To correct the entered parameter values after the warning or error message, press the ESC key. Use the arrow keys to switch to the parameter value which is to be corrected.

Warning Messages

Code	**Measures / Remedy**
SA000	No warning message present. This message can be read out via an optional communication module.
SA001	The value of the parameter *Rated voltage* **370** is out of the rated voltage range of the frequency inverter. The maximum reference voltage is indicated on the rating plate of the frequency inverter.
SA002	For a three-phase motor, the calculated efficiency is in the limit range. Check the values entered for the parameters *Rated voltage* **370**, *Rated current* **371** and *Rated power* **376**.
SA003	The value entered for parameter *Rated cos phi* **374** is outside of the normal range (0.6 to 0.95). Check the value.
SA004	For three-phase motor, the calculated slip is in the limit range. Check the values entered for parameters *Rated speed* **372** and *Rated frequency* **375**.

If an error message is displayed, the rated values must be checked and corrected. The guided commissioning procedure is repeated until the rated values have been entered correctly. Aborting the guided commissioning procedure by pressing ESC key should only be done by expert users because it may be possible that rated values have not been entered or determined correctly.

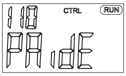
Error Messages

Code	Measures / Remedy
SF000	No error message exists.
SF001	The value entered for parameter *Rated current* **371** is too low. Correct the value.
SF002	The value for parameter *Rated current* **371** is too high, referred to parameters *Rated power* **376** and *Rated voltage* **370**. Correct the values.
SF003	The value entered for parameter *Rated cos phi* **374** is wrong (greater than 1 or smaller than 0.3). Correct the value.
SF004	The calculated slip frequency is negative. Correct the values entered for parameters *Rated speed* **372** and *Rated frequency* **375**.
SF005	The calculated slip frequency is too high. Correct the values entered for parameters *Rated speed* **372** and *Rated frequency* **375**.
SF006	The calculated total output of the drive is lower than the rated power. Correct the value entered for parameter *Rated power* **376**.
SF007	The set configuration is not supported by the guided commissioning. For parameter *Configuration* **30**, select one of the configurations described in these operating instructions.

7.2.6 Parameter identification

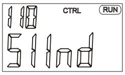
In addition to the parameterized rated data, the selected configuration demands knowledge of further machine data not stated on the rating plate of the three-phase machine. In addition to entering the rated motor parameters or as an alternative, the required machine data can also be measured during the guided commissioning process. The machine data are measured while the drive is at a standstill. The measured values are entered in the parameter automatically either directly or after the calculation. The procedure and the duration of the parameter identification depend on the type of machine connected and the device.

After checking the machine data entered, the guided commissioning switches to the parameter identification.



- Confirm the display "PAidE" by pressing the ENT key.

During the parameter identification, the connected load is measured.

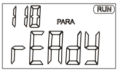


The safety functions of the frequency inverter avoid a release of the power unit if no signal is present at digital input S1IND. If a signal was already applied at the beginning of the guided commissioning, the "S1Ind" message is not displayed.

Note: The parameter identification feature of the frequency inverter requires the presence of a signal at digital input S1IND for release of the power unit.

Warning! Switch off power supply before connecting and disconnecting control terminal S1IND.
When the frequency inverter is disconnected from power supply, the mains, DC-link voltage and motor terminals may still be live for some time. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting to work at the unit.

- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.



- Confirm the final "rEAdY" message by pressing the ENT key.

Canceling the operation with the ESC key or withdrawing the release signal S1IND results in an incomplete take-over of the values.

Note: In the case of higher requirements as regards the accuracy of the speed/torque control, you should carry out the guided commissioning procedure once again **under operating conditions** because part of the machine data depends on the operating temperature.
During this procedure, confirm the machine data already entered.

After completion of the parameter identification, warning messages may be displayed. Depending on the warning message code, the following instructions should be followed and the measures indicated should be taken.

Warning Messages

Code	Measures / Remedy
SA0021	The stator resistance is very high. The following causes are possible: – The motor cable cross-section is not sufficient. – The motor cable is too long. – The motor cable is not connected correctly. – The contacts are not in a proper condition (corrosion).
SA0022	The rotor resistance is very high. The following causes are possible: – The motor cable cross-section is not sufficient. – The motor cable is too long. – The motor cable is not connected correctly. – The contacts are not in a proper condition (corrosion).
SA0041	The slip speed was not determined correctly. Check the values entered for parameters *Rated speed* **372** and *Rated frequency* **375**.
SA0042	The slip speed was not determined correctly. Check the values entered for parameters *Rated speed* **372** and *Rated frequency* **375**.
SA0051	The machine data for star connection were entered, the motor, however, is connected in delta. For star operation, change the motor cable connection. For delta operation, check the entered rated motor values. Repeat the parameter identification.
SA0052	The machine data for delta connection were entered, the motor, however, is connected in star. For delta operation, change the motor cable connection. For star operation, check the entered rated motor values. Repeat the parameter identification.
SA0053	A phase asymmetry was measured. Check the cables at the terminals of the motor and the frequency inverter for proper connection and check the contacts for corrosion.

After completion or during the parameter identification, error messages may be displayed. Depending on the error code, the following instructions should be followed and the measures indicated should be taken.

Error Messages	
Code	**Measures / Remedy**
SF0011	The main inductance measurement has failed because the motor has a high slip. Correct the rated motor values in parameters **370**, **371**, **372**, **374**, **375** and **376**. Carry out the guided commissioning once again. In case an error message is displayed again, enter the value 110 for parameter *Configuration* **30** (sensorless regulation according to U/f-characteristic) if value 410 was set so far. Carry out the guided commissioning once again.
SF0012	The leakage inductance measurement has failed because the motor has a high slip. Correct the rated motor values in parameters **370**, **371**, **372**, **374**, **375** and **376**. Carry out the guided commissioning once again. In case an error message is displayed again, enter the value 110 for parameter *Configuration* **30** (sensorless regulation according to U/f-characteristic) if value 410 was set so far. Carry out the guided commissioning once again.
SF0021	The measurement of the stator resistance did not deliver a plausible value. Check the cables at the terminals of the motor and the frequency inverter for proper connection and check the contacts for corrosion and safe contact. Repeat the parameter identification.
SF0022	The measurement of the rotor resistance did not deliver a plausible value. Check the cables at the terminals of the motor and the frequency inverter for proper connection and check the contacts for corrosion and safe contact. Repeat the parameter identification.

7.2.7 Application data

Due to the wide range of drive applications with the resulting parameter settings it is necessary to check further parameters. The parameters polled during the guided commissioning procedure were selected from standard applications. After completion of commissioning, further parameters can be set in the PARA menu branch.

7.2.7.1 Acceleration and deceleration

The settings define how fast the output frequency changes after a reference value change or a start, stop or brake command.

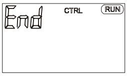
Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
420	Acceleration (Clockwise)	0.00 Hz/s	999.99 Hz/s	5.00 Hz/s
421	Deceleration (Clockwise)	0.00 Hz/s	999.99 Hz/s	5.00 Hz/s

Attention! The deceleration of the drive is monitored in the default parameter setting *Voltage controller operation mode* **670**. The deceleration ramp can be extended in the case of an increase in the DC link voltage during regenerative operation and/or during the braking process.

7.2.7.2 Set points at multi-functional input

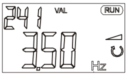
The multi-functional input MFI1 can be parameterized for a reference value signal in *Operation mode* **452.** Operation mode 3 should only be selected by expert users for drive control via *Fixed frequency 1* **480** and *Fixed frequency 2* **481**.

Operation mode **452**	**Function**
1 - Voltage Input	Voltage signal (MFI1A), 0V ... 10V
2 - Current Input	Current signal (MFI1A), 0mA ... 20mA
3 - Digital Input	Digital signal (MFI1D), 0V ...24V



- Confirm the "End" display by pressing the ENT key.

The guided commissioning of the frequency inverter is terminated via a reset and the initialization of the frequency inverter. The relay output X10 signals a fault.



After successful initialization of the frequency inverter, the factory-set parameter *Actual frequency* **241** is displayed. If a signal is present at digital inputs S1IND (controller release) and S2IND (start clockwise operation) or at digital inputs S1IND (controller release) and S3IND (start of anti-clockwise operation), the drive is accelerated to the adjusted *minimum frequency* **418** (default values: 3.50 Hz in configurations 110, 111, 410, 411, 430 and 0.00 Hz in configurations 210, 211, 230).

7.2.7.3 Selection of an actual value for display

After commissioning, the value of parameter *Actual frequency* **241** is displayed at the control unit KP500.
If another actual value is to be displayed after a restart, make the following settings:

- Use the arrow keys to select the actual value to be displayed as from now.
- Use the ENT key to display the value of the parameter.
- Press the ENT key again. "SEt" is displayed for confirmation.

As from now, the selected actual value is displayed after each restart.

If the parameter settings were made via the optional control software or in the PARA menu branch of the control unit, the display of the selected actual value must be activated manually. Use the ESC key to switch to the selection of the actual value for display again.

7.3 Check direction of rotation

Warning! Dangerous voltage may be present at the motor terminals and the terminals of the brake resistor even after the frequency inverter has been disconnected from power supply. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting to work at the unit.

- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.

To check if the reference value and the actual direction of rotation of the drive correspond to one another, proceed as follows:

- Operate the drive at low speed, i.e. specify a reference value of approx. 10%.
- Release the frequency inverter briefly {signal at digital inputs S1IND (controller release) and S2IND (start of clockwise operation) or S1IND (controller release) and S3IND (start of anti-clockwise operation)}.
- Check if the motor shaft turns in the required direction.

In case the sense of rotation is wrong, exchange two motor phases, e.g. U and V at the terminals of the frequency inverter. The mains-side connection of the frequency inverter does not affect the sense of rotation of the drive. In addition to checking the drive, the corresponding actual values and operating messages can be read out by means of the control unit.

Note: The commissioning of the frequency inverter is complete and can be complemented by further settings in the PARA menu. The set parameters have been selected in such a way that they are sufficient for commissioning in most applications. The other settings which are relevant to the application can be checked according to the operating instructions.

If the controller release of the frequency inverter at S1IND is switched off the power output stage will be disabled. The motor will coast down or, if installed, a break will be activated.

7.4 Speed sensor

For some configurations an incremental speed sensor must be connected. Dependent on the speed sensor type it can be connected to the basic device or to an expansion module. Some applications require the connection to the basic device as well as to the expansion module.

The source of the actual speed value is selected via parameter *Actual Speed Source* **766**. By default, speed sensor 1 is used as the actual speed source. If speed sensor 2 of an expansion module delivers the actual value signal for the speed controller, speed sensor 2 must be selected as the source.

Actual Speed Source **766**	Function
1 - Speed Sensor 1	The actual speed source is speed sensor 1 of the basic device (factory setting).
2 - Speed Sensor 2	The actual speed source is speed sensor 2 of an expansion module.[1]

[1] Only available if an expansion module is installed.

Dependent on the application and applied speed sensors the settings of parameters must be adapted according to the following table.

Parameter		Only speed sensor 1	Only speed sensor 2	Both speed sensors
490	Operation Mode speed sensor 1	> 0	0 - Off	> 0
491	Division Marks speed sensor 1	1…8192	X	1…8192
493	Operation Mode speed sensor 2	0 - Off	0	> 0
494	Division Marks speed sensor 2	X	1…8192	1…8192
495	Level	X	Selection	Selection
766	Actual Speed Source	1	2	1 or 2

X: can be set to any value, it is not evaluated
The above-mentioned parameters are selectable dependent on configuration setting and installed expansion module.

Note: Some applications require two speed sensors. Parameter *Actual Speed Source* **766** must be set to the motor speed sensor for motor control. The other speed sensor is used external. Comply with the application manuals "Electronic gear" and "Positioning".

7.4.1 Speed sensor 1

Connect the speed sensor tracks to the digital inputs S5IND (track A), S4IND (track B) and S6IND (track Z).
The speed sensor type and the evaluation required are adjusted via the *Operation Mode* **490** of speed sensor 1.
For a detailed description of possible settings refer to section 9.4.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact.**
490	Operation Mode speed sensor 1	Selection		
491	Division Marks speed sensor 1	1	8192	1024

Note: Dependent on the *Operation Mode* **490** of speed sensor 1 the digital inputs S4IND, S5IND and S6IND are disabled for other functions. The functions will not be evaluated.

7.4.2 Speed sensor 2

Speed sensor 2 must be connected to an expansion module. For connection, functions and detailed parameter description refer to the applicable operation instructions manual of the expansion module.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact.**
493	Operation Mode speed sensor 2		Selection	
494	Division Marks speed sensor 2	1	8192	1024
495	Level		Selection	

The parameters 493, 494 and 495 are selectable dependent on the installed expansion module.

Note: Dependent on the *Operation Mode* **493** of speed sensor 2 some digital inputs of the expansion module are disabled for other functions. The functions will not be evaluated.

7.5 Set-up via the Communication Interface

Parameter-setting and commissioning of the frequency inverter via one of the optional communication interfaces include the plausibility check and the parameter identification functions. The parameters can be adjusted by qualified users. The parameter selection during the guided commissioning procedure includes the basic parameters. These are based on standard applications of the corresponding configuration and are therefore useful for commissioning.

Caution! Parameter settings may only be changed by qualified staff. Before starting the commissioning process, read the documentation carefully and comply with the safety instructions.

The parameter *SETUP Selection* **796** defines the function which is carried out directly after the selection (if controller release signal is present at digital input S1IND). The operation modes include functions which are also carried out automatically one after the other during the guided commissioning procedure.

SETUP Selection **796**	Function
0 - Clear Status	The auto set-up routine does not perform a function
1 - Continue	The warning message is acknowledged and the auto set-up routine is continued.
2 - Abort	The auto set-up routine is stopped and a RESET of the frequency inverter is performed.
10 - Complete Setup, DS0	The auto set-up routine is performed in data set 0 and the parameter values are stored in all of the four data sets identically.
11 - Complete Setup, DS1	The parameter values of the auto set-up are stored in data set 1.
12 - Complete Setup, DS2	The parameter values of the auto set-up are stored in data set 2.
13 - Complete Setup, DS3	The parameter values of the auto set-up are stored in data set 3.
14 - Complete Setup, DS4	The parameter values of the auto set-up are stored in data set 4.
20 - Check Machine Data, DS0	The auto set-up routine checks the rated motor parameters in the four data sets.
21 - Check Machine Data, DS1	The rated motor parameters in data set 1 are checked for plausibility.
22 - Check Machine Data, DS2	The rated motor parameters in data set 2 are checked for plausibility.
23 - Check Machine Data, DS3	The rated motor parameters in data set 3 are checked for plausibility.
24 - Check Machine Data, DS4	The rated motor parameters in data set 4 are checked for plausibility.
30 - Calculation and Para-Ident., DS0	The auto set-up routine determines extended motor data via the parameter identification feature, calculates dependent parameters and stores the parameter values in all of the four data sets identically.
31 - Calculation and Para-Ident., DS1	Further motor data are measured, dependent parameters are calculated and the parameter values are saved in data set 1.
32 - Calculation and Para-Ident., DS2	Further motor data are measured, dependent parameters are calculated and the parameter values are saved in data set 2.
33 - Calculation and Para-Ident., DS3	Further motor data are measured, dependent parameters are calculated and the parameter values are saved in data set 3.
34 - Calculation and Para-Ident., DS4	Further motor data are measured, dependent parameters are calculated and the parameter values are saved in data set 4.

The individual steps of the auto set-up routine can be monitored and checked via parameter *SETUP Status* **797**. The setup routine via the communication interface continuously updates the status parameter which can be read out via the interface.

Status Messages

Message	Meaning
Ok	Auto set-up routine has been carried out.
PC Phase 1	The plausibility check of the motor data is active.
PC Phase 2	The calculation of dependent parameters is active.
S1IND	The parameter identification requires a controller release signal at digital input S1IND.
Parameter identification	The rated motor values are checked by the parameter identification feature.
Setup already active	The setup routine via the control unit is being carried out.
No release signal	The parameter identification requires a controller release signal at digital input S1IND.
Error	Error during the auto set-up routine.
Warning phase asymmetry	The parameter identification feature diagnosed an unbalance during the measurements in the three motor phases.

Warning Messages

Code	Message	Meaning
SA0001	Rated Voltage	The value of the parameter *Rated voltage* **370** is out of the rated voltage range of the frequency inverter. The maximum reference voltage is indicated on the rating plate of the frequency inverter.
SA0002	Efficiency	For a three-phase motor, the calculated efficiency is in the limit range. Check and correct, if necessary, the values entered for the parameters *Rated voltage* **370**, *Rated current* **371** and *Rated power* **376**.
SA0003	Rated Cos Phi	The value entered for parameter *Rated cos phi* **374** is outside of the normal range (0.6 to 0.95). Correct the value.
SA0004	Slip Frequency	For three-phase motor, the calculated slip is in the limit range. Check and, if necessary, correct *Rated speed* **372** and *Rated frequency* **375**.

Error Messages

Code	Message	Meaning
SF0001	Rated current too low	The value entered for parameter *Rated current* **371** is too low. Correct the value.
SF0002	Rated current too high	The value for parameter *Rated current* **371** is too high, referred to parameters *Rated power* **376** and *Rated voltage* **370**. Correct the values.
SF0003	Rated Cos Phi	The value entered for parameter *Rated cos phi* **374** is wrong (greater than 1 or smaller than 0.3). Correct the value.
SF0004	Negative slip frequency	The calculated slip frequency is negative. Check and, if necessary, correct the values entered for parameters *Rated speed* **372** and *Rated frequency* **375**.
SF0005	Slip frequency too large	The calculated slip frequency is too high. Check and, if necessary, correct the values entered for parameters *Rated speed* **372** and *Rated frequency* **375**.
SF0006	Output balance	The calculated total output of the drive is lower than the rated power. Correct and check, if necessary, the value entered for parameter *Rated power* **376**.
SF0007	Config. not supported	The set configuration is not supported by the auto set-up routine.

8 Inverter Data

The series ACT frequency inverters are suited for a wide range of applications. The modular hardware and software structure enables customer-specific adaptation. The available hardware functionality of the frequency inverter is displayed in the control unit and the optional control software VPlus. The software parameters can be adjusted to meet the requirements of the specific application.

8.1 Serial Number

The *Serial Number* **0** is entered on the nameplate during the fabrication of the frequency inverter. Information on the device type and the fabrication data (8-digit number) are indicated. Additionally, the serial number is printed on the nameplate.

Serial number **0** :	ACT 401 – 09 ; 04102013
Nameplate:	Type: ACT 401 – 09 ; Serial No.: 04102013

8.2 Optional Modules

Modular extension of the hardware is possible via the plug-in slots. The *Optional modules* **1** detected by the frequency inverter and the corresponding designations of the modules are displayed on the control unit and in the optional control software VPlus after initialization. For the parameters required for the expansion module, refer to the corresponding operating instructions.

CM-232 ; EM-IO-01

8.3 Inverter Software Version

The firmware stored in the frequency inverter defines the available parameters and functions of the software. The software version is indicated in parameter *Inverter software version* **12**. In addition to the version, the 6-digit software key is printed on the name plate of the frequency inverter.

Inverter software version **12** :	4.2.3
Nameplate:	Version: 4.2.3 ; Software: 140 012

8.4 Set Password

As a protection against unauthorized access, the parameter *Set password* **27** can be set such that anyone who wants to change parameters must enter this password before. A change of parameter is only possible if the password in entered correctly. If the *Set password* **27** parameter is set to zero, no password is required for access to the parameters. The previous password is deleted.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
27	Set Password	0	999	0

8.5 Control Level

The *Control level* **28** defines the scope of the functions to be parameterized. The operating instructions describe the parameters on the third control level. These parameters should only be set by qualified users.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
28	Control Level	1	3	1

8.6 User Name

The *User name* **29** can be entered via the optional control software VPlus. The plant or machine designation cannot be displayed completely via the control unit.

32 alpha-numerical characters

8.7 Configuration

The *Configuration* **30** determines the assignment and basic function of the control inputs and outputs as well as the software functions. The software of the frequency inverters offers various configuration options. These differ with respect to the way in which the drive is controlled. Analog and digital inputs can be combined and complemented by optional communication protocols. The operating instructions describe the following configurations and the relevant parameters in the **third** *Control level* **28** (adjustment of parameter *Control level* **28** to value 3).

Configuration 110, sensorless control
Configuration 110 contains the functions for variable-speed control of a 3-phase machine in a wide range of standard applications. The motor speed is set according to the V/f characteristic in accordance with the voltage/frequency ratio.

Configuration 111, sensorless control with technology controller
Configuration 111 extends the functionality of the sensor-less control by software functions for easier adaptation to the customer's requirements in different applications. Depending on the application, the technology controller may be used, which enables the control of flow rate, pressure, contents level or speed.

Configuration 410, sensorless field-oriented control
Configuration 410 contains the functions for sensor-less, field-oriented control of a 3-phase machine. The current motor speed is determined from the present currents and voltages in combination with the machine parameters. In this configuration, parallel connection of several 3-phase motors is possible to a limited extent only.

Configuration 411, sensorless field-oriented control with Technology Controller
Configuration 411 extends the functionality of Configuration 410 by a Technology Controller, which enables the control of flow rate, pressure, contents level or speed

Configuration 430, sensorless field-oriented control with speed/torque control
Configuration 430 extends the functionality of Configuration 410 by functions for torque-dependent, field-oriented control. The reference torque is represented as a percentage and it is transmitted into the corresponding operational performance of the application. Change-over between variable-speed control and torque-dependent control is done via a digital control input.

Configuration 210, field-oriented control
Configuration 210 contains the functions for speed-controlled, field-oriented control of a 3-phase machine with speed sensor feedback. The separate control of torque and flux-forming current enables high drive dynamics with a high load moment. The necessary speed sensor feedback results in a precise speed and torque performance.

Configuration 211, field-oriented control with technology controller
Configuration 211 extends the functionality of Configuration 210 by a Technology Controller, which enables the control of flow rate, pressure, contents level or speed.

Configuration 230, field-orientated control with speed/torque control
Configuration 230 extends the functionality of Configuration 210 by functions for torque-dependent, field-oriented control. The reference torque is represented as a percentage and it is transmitted into the corresponding operational performance of the application. Change-over between variable-speed control and torque-dependent control is done via a digital control input.

In the table, you will find a list of functions which are available in the different configurations.

		Configuration							
		V/f - characteristic		field-oriented control					
		sensorless		sensorless			sensor		
Function	**Chapter**	**110**	**111**	**410**	**411**	**430**	**210**	**211**	**230**
Speed control	16.5.3			x		x	x	x	x
Torque control	16.5.2					x			x
Switch-over speed/torque control	14.4.6					x			x
Dynamic Voltage Pre-Control	15.1	x	x						
Intelligent current limits	16.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Voltage controller	16.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Technology controller:	16.3		x		x			x	
– pressure control	16.3		x		x			x	
– flow rate control	16.3		x		x			x	
– Contents level control	16.3		x		x			x	
– Speed control	16.3		x		x			x	
Slip compensation	16.4.1	x							
Current limit value controller	16.4.2	x	x						
Current Controller	16.5.1			x	x	x	x	x	x
Limit Value Sources	16.5.2.1			x	x	x	x	x	x
Acceleration Pre-Control	16.5.4			x	x	x	x	x	x
Field Controller	16.5.5			x	x	x	x	x	x
Modulation Controller	16.5.6			x	x	x	x	x	x
Starting behavior:	11.1	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
– Starting current impression	11.1.1.1	x	x	x	x	x			
– Flux Formation	11.1.2			x	x	x	x	x	x
Stopping behavior:	11.2	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
– Direct current brake	11.3	x	x						
Auto Start	11.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Search Run	11.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Reference point positioning	11.6.1	x		x			x		
Axle Positioning	11.6.2						x		
Frequency Reference Channel	13.4	x		x		x	x		x
Reference percentage channel	13.5		x		x	x		x	x
Fixed Frequencies	13.6.1	x	x	x	x	x	x		x
Fixed Percentages	13.6.3		x		x	x		x	x
Block Frequencies	13.9	x	x	x	x	x	x		x
Repetition frequency input	13.11	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Brake Chopper	17.4	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Motor Circuit Breaker	17.5	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
V-belt Monitoring	17.6	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
Motor Chopper	17.7.1			x	x	x	x	x	x
Temperature Adjustment	17.7.2			x	x	x	x	x	x
Encoder Monitoring	17.7.3						x	x	x

8.8 Language

The parameters are stored in the frequency inverter in various languages. The parameter description is displayed in the selected *Language* **33**, e.g. by the PC program VPlus,.

Language **33**	Function
0 - Deutsch	Parameter description in German.
1 - English	Parameter description in English.
2 - Italiano	Parameter description in Italian.

8.9 Programming

The parameter *Program(ming)* **34** enables acknowledgment of a fault message and resetting to the factory settings. The display of the control unit reads "dEFLt" or "rESEt" and the LEDs indicate the status of the frequency inverter.

Program(ming) **34**	Function
111 - Parameter transfer	The KP 500 control unit is prepared for parameter transmission. A connected frequency inverter can receive data from the control unit.
110 - Normal mode	Reset the KP 500 control unit to standard mode.
123 - RESET	The current error message can be acknowledged via digital input S1IND or the software parameter. The display of the control unit reads "rESEt".
4444 - Default	The parameters of the selected configuration are overwritten - except for a few exceptions - by the default settings. The display of the control unit reads "dEFLt".

Note: The parameters *Control Level* **28**, *Language* **33** as well as *Configuration* **30** are not changed during the reset to the default settings (*Program(ing)* **34** = 4444).

9 Machine Data

The input of the machine data is the foundation for the functionality of the control functions and methods. In the course of the guided commissioning, the necessary parameters are inquired according to the selected *Configuration* **30**.

9.1 Rated Motor Parameters

Set the rated parameters of the three-phase asynchronous machine according to the name plate or the data sheet of the motor. The default settings of the machine parameters are based on the nominal data of the frequency inverter and the corresponding four-pole three-phase motor. The machine data required for the control functions and methods are checked for plausibility and calculated in the course of the commissioning.
The user should check the rated values specified by default.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
370	Rated Voltage	$0.17 \cdot U_{FIN}$	$2 \cdot U_{FIN}$	U_{FIN}
371	Rated Current	$0.01 \cdot I_{FIN}$	$10 \cdot o \cdot I_{FIN}$	I_{FIN}
372	Rated Speed	96 min^{-1}	60 000 min^{-1}	n_N
373	No. of Pole Pairs	1	24	2
374	Rated cosine (φ)	0.01	1.00	$\cos(\varphi)_N$
375	Rated Frequency	10.00 Hz	1000.00 Hz	50.00
376	Rated mechanical power	$0.01 \cdot P_{FIN}$	$10 \cdot P_{FIN}$	P_{FIN}

In the case of three-phase machines, the speed can be increased at a constant torque if the motor winding can be switched over from star to delta connection. The change-over results in a change of the dependent parameters by a factor of square root of 3.

Attention! The rated data of the motor are to be entered according to the specifications on the rating plate for the motor connection type used (star or delta connection). If the data entered deviate from the rating plate, the parameters will not be identified correctly. Parameterize the rated data according to the specifications for the motor winding connection indicated on the rating plate. Take the higher rated current of the connected asynchronous motor into account.

9.2 Further motor parameters

In particular the field-oriented control requires the determination of further data which cannot be read off the name plate of the 3-phase machine for the precise calculation of the machine model. In the course of the guided commissioning, the parameter identification was carried out to measure the further motor parameters.

9.2.1 Stator Resistance

The resistance of the stator winding was measured during the guided commissioning. The measured value is stored as a phase value in parameter *Stator resistance* **377** and is 3 times smaller than the winding resistance in delta connection.
By default, the equivalent stator resistance of a standard motor is entered to match the nominal power of the frequency inverter.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
377	Stator Resistance	0 mΩ	65535 mΩ	R_{sN}

The stator resistance can be optimized while the machine is in no-load operation. At the steady-state operating point, the torque-forming current *Isq* **216** and/or the estimated *Active current* **214** should be zero. Due to the temperature-dependent of the stator resistance, the adjustment should be done at a winding temperature which is also reached during normal operation.
A correct measurement will optimize the control functions.

9.2.2 Leakage Coefficient

The leakage coefficient of the machine defines the ratio of the leakage inductivity to the main inductivity. The torque and flux-forming current components are thus coupled via the leakage coefficient. Optimization of the leakage coefficient within the field-orientated control systems requires acceleration to various operating points of the drive. Unlike the torque-forming current *Isq* **216**, the flow-forming current *Isd* **215** should be largely independent of the load torque. The flow-forming current component is inversely proportional to the leakage coefficient. If the leakage coefficient is increased, the torque-forming current increases and the flux-forming component drops. The adjustment should result in a relatively constant actual current *Isd* **215**, matching the parameter *Rated magnetizing current* **716**, regardless of the load on the drive.
The sensorless control system uses the parameter *Leakage coefficient* **378** in order to optimize the synchronization to one drive.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
378	Leakage Coeff.	1.0 %	20.0 %	7.0 %

9.2.3 Magnetizing Current

The *Rated magnetizing current* **716** is a measure of the flux in the motor and thus of the voltage which is present at the machine in no-load condition depending on the speed. The guided commissioning determines this value at about 30% of the *Rated current* **371**. This current can be compared to the field current of an externally excited direct current machine.

In order to optimize the sensor-less field-oriented control system, the machine has to be operated without load at a rotational frequency which is below the *Rated frequency* **375.** The accuracy of the optimization increases with the adjusted *Switching frequency* **400** and when the drive is in no-load operation. The flux-forming actual current value *Isd* **215** to be read out should roughly match the set *Rated magnetizing current* **716**.
The field-orientated control with speed sensor feedback uses the parameterized *Rated magnetizing current* **716** for the flux in the motor.
The dependence of the magnetizing on the frequency and voltage at the corresponding nominal operating point in question is taken into account by a magnetizing characteristic. The characteristic is calculated via three points, in particular in the field weakening range above the rated frequency. The parameter identification has determined the magnetizing characteristic of the motor and set the parameters *Magnetizing current 50%* **713**, *Magnetizing current 80%* **713** and *Magnetizing current 110%* **713**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
713	Magnetizing current 50% Flux	1.00%	50.00%	31.00%
714	Magnetizing current 80% Flux	1.00%	80.00%	65.00%
715	Magnetizing current 110% Flux	110.00%	197.00%	145.00%
716	Rated Magnetizing Current	$0.01 \cdot I_{FIN}$	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$	$0.3 \cdot I_{FIN}$

9.2.4 Rated Slip Correction Factor

The rotor time constant results from the inductivity of the rotor circuit and the rotor resistance. Due to the temperature-dependence of the rotor resistance and the saturation effects of the iron, the rotor time constant is also dependent on temperature and current. The load behavior and thus the rated slip depend on the rotor time constant. The guided commissioning determines the machine data during the parameter identification and sets the parameter *Rated slip correction factor* **718** accordingly. For the fine adjustment or a check of the rotor time constant, proceed as follows: Load the machine at fifty percent of the *Rated frequency* **375**. As a result, the voltage must be approximately fifty percent of the *Rated voltage* **370**, with a maximum tolerance of 5 %. If this is not the case, the correction factor must be changed accordingly. The larger the correction factor is set, the stronger the voltage drop when the machine is loaded. The value calculated by the rotor time constants can be read out via the actual value *Current rotor time constant* **227**. The adjustment should be done at a winding temperature which is also reached during normal operation of the motor.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
718	Rated Slip Correction Factor	0.01%	300.00%	100.00%

9.3 Internal values

The following parameters are used for the internal processing of motor data. An adjustment is not necessary.

Parameter	
No.	**Description**
368	Internal value 01
399	Internal value 02
402	Internal value 03
508	Internal value 04
702	Internal value 05
703	Internal value 06
704	Internal value 07

Parameter	
No.	**Description**
705	Internal value 08
706	Internal value 09
707	Internal value 10
708	Internal value 11
709	Internal value 12
745	Internal value 13
798	Internal value 14

9.4 Speed sensor 1

The frequency inverters are to be adapted to the application depending on the requirements. A part of the available *Configurations* **30** demand continuous measurement of the actual speed for the control functions and methods. The necessary connection of an incremental speed sensor is done on the digital control terminals S5IND (track A) and S4IND (track B) of the frequency inverter.

9.4.1 Operation mode speed sensor 1

Operation mode speed sensor 1 **490** can be selected according to the connected incremental speed sensor. A unipolar speed sensor is to be connected to the standard control terminals.

Operation mode 490	Function
0 - Off	Speed measurement is not active; the digital inputs are available for other functions.
1 – Single Evaluation	Two-channel speed sensor with recognition of direction of rotation via track signals A and B; one signal edge is evaluated per division mark.
4 – Quadruple evaluation	Two-channel speed sensor with recognition of direction of rotation via track signals A and B; four signal edges are evaluated per division mark.
11 – Single evaluation without sign	One-channel speed sensor via track signal A; the actual speed value is positive. One signal edge is evaluated per division mark. The digital input S4IND is available for further functions.
12 – Double evaluation without sign	One-channel speed sensor via track signal A; the actual speed value is positive. Two signal edges are evaluated per division mark. The digital input S4IND is available for further functions.
101 – Single evaluation inverted	Same as in operation mode 1. The actual speed value is inverted. (Alternative to exchanging the track signals)
104 – Quadruple evaluation inverted	Same as in operation mode 4. The actual speed value is inverted. (Alternative to exchanging the track signals)
111 – Single evaluation negative	Same as operation mode 11. The actual speed value is negative.
112 – Double evaluation negative	Same as operation mode 12. The actual speed value is negative.

Attention! In configurations 210, 211 and 230, digital input S4IND is by default set for the evaluation of a speed sensor signal (track B).
If an operation mode without sign is selected (*Operation Mode* **11** or *Operation Mode* **12**), this input is not set for the evaluation of a speed sensor signal and can be used for other functions.

9.4.2 Division marks, speed sensor 1

The number of increments of the connected speed sensor can be adjusted via parameter *Division marks, speed sensor 1* **491**. Select the division marks of the speed sensor according to the speed range of the application.
The maximum number of division marks S_{max} is defined by the frequency limit of f_{max}=150 kHz of the digital inputs S5IND (track A) and S4IND (track B).

$$S_{max} = 150000\ \mathrm{Hz} \cdot \frac{60\ \mathrm{s/min}}{n_{max}}$$

f_{max} = 150000 Hz
n_{max} = Max. speed of the motor in RPM

For example:

$$S_{max} = 150000\ \mathrm{Hz} \cdot \frac{60\mathrm{s}}{1500} = 600$$

To guarantee true running of the drive, an encoder signal must be evaluated at least every 2 ms (signal frequency f = 500 Hz). The minimum number of division marks S_{min} of the incremental encoder for a required minimum speed n_{min} can be calculated from this requirement.

$$S_{min} = 500\ \mathrm{Hz} \cdot \frac{60\ \mathrm{s/min}}{A \cdot n_{min}}$$

n_{min} = Min. speed of the motor in RPM
A = Evaluation (1, 2, 4)

For example:

$$S_{min} = 500\ \mathrm{Hz} \cdot \frac{60\ \mathrm{s}}{2 \cdot 10} = 1500$$

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
491	Division marks, speed sensor 1	1	8192	1024

10 System Data

The various control functions and methods according to the selected *Configuration* **30** are supplemented by control and special functions. For monitoring the application, process parameters are calculated from electrical control parameters.

10.1 Actual Value System

The parameter Factor *Actual Value System* **389** can be used if the drive is monitored via the parameter *Actual Value System* **242**.
The *Actual Frequency* **241** to be monitored is multiplied by the Factor *Actual Value System* **389** and can be read out via the parameter *Actual Value System* **242**, i.e. *Actual Frequency* **241** x Factor *Actual Value System* **389** = *Actual Value System* **242**.

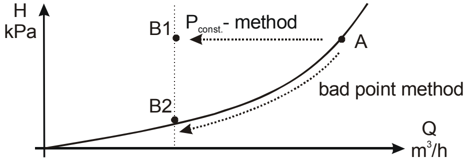
Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
389	Factor Actual Value System	-100.000	100.000	1.000

10.2 Volume Flow and Pressure

The parameterization of the factors *Nominal Volumetric Flow* **397** and *Nominal Pressure* **398** is necessary if the matching actual values *Volumetric flow* **285** and *Pressure* **286** are used to monitor the drive. The conversion is done using the electrical control parameters.
Volume Flow **285** and *Pressure* **286** are referred to the *Effective Current* **214** in the case of the sensor-less control methods. In the case of the field-oriented control methods, they are referred to the torque-forming current component *Isq* **216**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
397	Nominal Volumetric Flow	1 m^3/h	99999 m^3/h	10 m^3/h
398	Nominal Pressure	0.1 kPa	999.9 kPa	100.0 kPa

Line mains or channel characteristic:



Point A in the figure describes the rating point of a pump. The transition to partial load operation mode B1 can be effected at a constant pressure H (change of conveying flow Q, pressure H remains constant). The transition to partial load operation mode B2 can be effected according to the bad point method (change of pressure H and conveying flow Q). Both methods can be realized with the integrated technology controller in configurations 111 and 211. The actual values displayed are calculated according to the bad point method independently of the selected *Operation Mode* **440** of the technology controller.

11 Operational Behavior

The operational behavior of the frequency inverter can be adjusted to the application by setting the parameters appropriately. In particular the starting and stopping behavior can be selected according to the selected *Configuration* **30**. Additionally, features such as Auto Start, synchronization and positioning functions facilitate the integration in the application.

11.1 Starting Behavior

The start of the 3-phase machine can be parameterized in accordance with the control functions and methods. In contrast to the sensor-less control method, the field-oriented control methods only require the definition of the limit values *Max. Flux Formation Time* **780** and *Current during Flux Formation* **781** for the adjustment of the starting behavior. The acceleration behavior of the sensor-less control method in configurations 110 and 111 can be selected as described in the following chapter.

11.1.1 Starting Behavior of Sensorless Control System

The parameter *Operation Mode* **620** for the starting behavior is available in configurations 110 and 111. Depending on the operation mode selected, the machine is magnetized first or a starting current is impressed. The voltage drop across the stator resistance which reduces the torque in the lower frequency range can be compensated by the IxR compensation.
To ensure the correct function of the IxR compensation, the stator resistance is determined during the guided commissioning. The IxR compensation is only activated after the stator resistance was determined correctly.

Operation Mode **620**	**Starting Behavior**
0 - Off	At the start the voltage with the th value of parameter *Starting Voltage* **600** is set at an output frequency of 0 Hz. After this, the output voltage and the output frequency are changed according to the control method. The break-away torque and the current at the start is determined by the adjusted starting voltage. It may be necessary to optimize the starting behavior via the parameter *Starting Voltage* **600**.
1 - Magnetization	In this operation mode, the *Current during Flux-Formation* **781** for magnetization is impressed into the motor after release. The output frequency is kept at zero Hz for the *Maximum Flux-Formation Time* **780**. After this time has expired, the output frequency follows the adjusted V/f characteristic. (see operation mode 0- Off)
2 - Magnetization + current impression	Operation mode 2 includes operation mode 1. After the *Maximum Flux-Formation Time* **780** has elapsed, the output frequency is increased according to the set acceleration. If the output frequency reaches the value set with the parameter *Frequency Limit* **624**, the *Starting Current* **623** is withdrawn. There is a smooth transition to 1.4 times the frequency limit to the set V/f characteristic. As from this operating point, the output current depends on the load.

Table "Operation Modes for Starting Behavior" continued on next page.

Operation mode	Starting Behavior
3 - Magnetization + IxR compensation	Operation mode 3 includes operation mode 1 of the start function. When the output frequency reaches the value set with parameter *Frequency Limit* **624**, the increase of the output voltage by the IxR compensation becomes effective. The V/f characteristic is displaced by the portion of voltage which depends on the stator resistance.
4 - Magnetization + current imp. + IxR compensation	In this operation mode, the current set with the parameter *Current during Flux-Formation* **781** is impressed into the motor for magnetization after release. The output frequency is kept at zero Hz for the *Maximum Flux-Formation Time* **780**. After the time has elapsed, the output frequency is increased according to the set acceleration. If the output frequency reaches the value set with the parameter *Frequency Limit* **624**, the *Starting Current* **623** is withdrawn. There is a smooth transition to the V/f characteristic, and a load-dependent output current is obtained. At the same time, the increase of the output voltage by the IxR compensation becomes effective as from this output frequency. The V/f characteristic is displaced by the portion of voltage which depends on the stator resistance.
12 - Magnetization + current imp. w. ramp stop	Operation mode 12 contains an additional function to guarantee a starting behavior under heavy duty conditions. The magnetization and starting current impression are done according to operation mode 2. The ramp stop takes the current consumption of the motor at the corresponding operating point into account and controls the frequency and voltage change by stopping the ramp. The *Controller Status* **275** signals the intervention of the controller by displaying the message "**RSTP**".
14 - Magnetization + current imp. w. r. + IxR comp.	In this operation mode, the functions of operation mode 12 are extended by the compensation of the voltage drop across the stator resistance. When the output frequency reaches the value set with parameter *Frequency Limit* **624**, the increase of the output voltage by the IxR compensation becomes effective. The V/f characteristic is displaced by the portion of voltage which depends on the stator resistance.

In contrast to field-oriented control systems, sensor-less control systems feature a current controller which controls the starting behavior. The PI controller checks the current impression by parameter *Starting Current* **623**. The proportional and integrating parts of current controller can be adjusted via parameters *Amplification* **621** and *Integral Time* **622**, respectively. The control functions can be deactivated by setting the parameters to 0.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
621	Amplification	0.01	10.00	1.00
622	Integral Time	1 ms	30000 ms	50 ms

11.1.1.1 Starting Current

Configurations 110, 111 and 410, 411 and 430 for control of a 3-phase machine use the starting current impression in operation modes 2, 4, 12 and 14 for the parameter *Operation Mode* **620**. The *Starting Current* **623** guarantees, in particular for heavy starting, sufficient torque until the *Frequency Limit* **624** is reached.
Applications in which high current is permanently needed at a low speed are to be realized using forced-ventilated motors for thermal reasons.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
623	Starting Current	0.0 A	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$	I_{FIN}

11.1.1.2 Frequency Limit

The *Starting current* **623** is impressed in configurations 110, 111, 410, 411 and 430 for control of a 3-phase machine until the *Frequency Limit* **624** is reached. Permanent operating points below the frequency limit are only admissible if forced-ventilated motors are used. The transition to the control method of the selected *configuration* **30** takes place above the frequency limit.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
624	Frequency Limit	0.00 Hz	100.00 Hz	2.60 Hz

11.1.2 Flux Formation

Field-oriented control in the configurations 210, 211, 230, 410, 411 and 430 are based on separate regulation of the flux-forming and torque-forming current components. Upon startup, the machine is magnetized and a current is impressed first. With the parameter *Current during Flux-Formation* **781** the magnetization current I_{sd} is set, with the parameter *Maximum Flux-Formation Time* **780** the maximum time for the current impression is set.
The current impression is done until the reference value of the rated magnetizing current is reached or the *Maximum Flux-Formation Time* **780** is exceeded.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
780	Maximum Flux-Formation Time	1 ms	10000 ms	300 ms **1)**
				1000 ms **2)**
781	Current during Flux Formation	$0.1 \cdot I_{FIN}$	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$	I_{FIN}

The factory setting of parameter *Maximum flux formation time* **780** depends on the setting of parameter *Configuration* **30**:
1) configurations 1xx
2) configurations 2xx / 4xx

11.2 Stopping Behavior

The stopping behavior of the three-phase machine can be defined via parameter *Operation Mode* **630**. Via the digital logic signals *Start Clockwise* **68** and *Start Anticlockwise* **69**, stopping is activated. By combining the logic signals which are assigned to the digital inputs by default, the stopping behavior can be selected from the following table.

Stopping Behavior

Operation Mode **630**		**Start Clockwise = 0 and Start Anticlockwise = 0**							
		Stopping behavior 0	Stopping behavior 1	Stopping behavior 2	Stopping behavior 3	Stopping behavior 4	Stopping behavior 5	Stopping behavior 6	Stopping behavior 7
Start Clockwise = 1 and Start Anticlockwise = 1	Stopping behavior 0 (Free stopping)	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	Stopping behavior 1 (Stop and Switch off)	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
	Stopping behavior 2 (Stop and Hold)	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27
	Stopping behavior 3 (Stop and DC brakes)	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37
	Stopping behavior 4 (Emergency Stop and Switch off)	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47
	Stopping behavior 5 (Emergency Stop and Hold)	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57
	Stopping behavior 6 (Emergency Stop and Brake)	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67
	Stopping behavior 7 (DC brakes)	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77

Operation Mode **630** of the stopping behavior is to be parameterized according to the matrix. The selection of the operation modes can vary according to the control method and the available control inputs.

Example: The machine is to stop according to stopping behavior 2 if the digital logic signals *Start Clockwise* **68** = 0 and *Start Anticlockwise* **69** = 0.
Additionally, the machine is to stop according to stopping behavior 1 if the digital logic signals *Start Clockwise* **68** = 1 and *Start Anticlockwise* **69** = 1.
To achieve this, the parameter *Operation Mode* **630** must be set to 12.

By selecting the stopping behavior you also select the control of a mechanical brake if operation mode „41- Open brake" is used for one digital output for controlling the brake.

Stopping Behavior	
Stopping behavior 0 **Free stopping**	The inverter is disabled immediately. The drive deenergized immediately and coasts freely.
Stopping behavior 1 **Stop + Switch off**	The drive is brought to a standstill at the set deceleration. As soon as the drive is at a standstill, the inverter is disabled after a holding time. The holding time can be set via the parameter *Holding Time* **638**. Depending on the setting of the parameter *Starting Function* **620**, the *Starting Current* **623** is impressed or the *Starting Voltage* **600** is applied for the duration of the holding time.
Stopping behavior 2 **Stop + Hold**	The drive is brought to a standstill at the set deceleration and remains permanently supplied with current. Depending on the setting of the parameter *Starting function* **620**, the *Starting Current* **623** is impressed as from standstill or the *Starting Voltage* **600** is applied.
Stopping behavior 3 **Stop + DC brakes**	The drive is brought to a standstill at the set deceleration. As from standstill, the direct current set via parameter *Braking Current* **631** is impressed for the *Braking Time* **632**. Comply with the notes in chapter "DC brake". Stopping behaviors 3, 6 and 7 are only available in the configurations for sensor-less control.
Stopping behavior 4 **Emergency stop + switch off**	The drive is brought to a standstill at the emergency stop deceleration. As soon as the drive is at a standstill, the inverter is disabled after a holding time. The holding time can be set via the parameter *Holding Time* **638**. Depending on the setting of the parameter *Starting Function* **620**, the *Starting Current* **623** is impressed as from standstill or the *Starting Voltage* **600** is applied.
Stopping behavior 5 **Emergency stop + Hold**	The drive is brought to a standstill at the set emergency stop deceleration and remains permanently supplied with current. Depending on the setting of the parameter *Starting Function* **620**, the *Starting Current* **623** is impressed as from standstill or the *Starting Voltage* **600** is applied.
Stopping behavior 6 **Emergency stop + Brake**	The drive is brought to a standstill at the set emergency stop deceleration. As from standstill, the direct current set via parameter *Braking Current* **631** is impressed for the *Braking Time* **632**. Comply with the notes in chapter "DC brake". Stopping behaviors 3, 6 and 7 are only available in the configurations for sensor-less control.
Stopping behavior 7 **Direct current brake**	Direct current braking is activated immediately. The direct current set with the parameter *Braking Current* **631** is impressed for the die *Braking Time* **632**. Comply with the notes in chapter "DC brake". Stopping behaviors 3, 6 and 7 are only available in the configurations for sensor-less control.

Comply with the notes for controlling a mechanical brake in chapter 14.3.4 Open brake.

11.2.1 Switch-Off Threshold

The *Switch-off Threshold Stop Function* **637** defines the frequency as from which a standstill of the drive is recognized. This percentage parameter value is applied to the set *Maximum Frequency* **419**.
The switch-off threshold is to be adjusted according to the load behavior of the drive and the device output, as the drive must be controlled to a speed below the switch-off threshold.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
637	Switch-Off Threshold	0.0 %	100.0 %	1.0 %

Attention! If the motor builds up a stopping torque, it may be possible that the switch-off threshold stop function is not reached due to the slip frequency and the standstill of the drive is not recognized. In this case, increase the value of the *Switch-off Threshold Stop Function* **637.**

11.2.2 Holding Time

The *Holding Time Stop Function* **638** is considered in stopping behaviors 1, 3, 4 and 6. Controlling to zero speed results in the motor heating up and should only be done for a short period in the case of internally ventilated motors.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
638	Holding Time	0.0 s	200.0 s	1.0 s

11.3 Direct current brake

Stopping behaviors 3, 6, 7 and the search run function include the direct current brake. Depending on the setting of the stop function, a direct current is impressed into the motor either directly or, when it is at a standstill, after the demagnetization time. The impression of the *Braking current* **631** results in the motor heating up and should only be done for a short period in the case of internally ventilated motors.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
631	Braking Current	0.00 A	$\sqrt{2}\cdot I_{FIN}$	$\sqrt{2}\cdot I_{FIN}$

The setting of the parameter *Braking Time* **632** defines the time-controlled stopping behavior. Contact-controlled operation of the direct current brake is activated by entering the value zero for the *Braking Time* **632**.

Time controlled:
The direct current brake is controlled by the status of signals Start clockwise and Start anticlockwise. The current set by the parameter *Braking Current* **631** flows until the time set by the parameter *Braking Time* **632** has expired. During the braking time the status of both signals Start clockwise and Start anticlockwise are logical 0 (low) or logical 1 (high).

Contact-controlled:
If the parameter *Braking Time* **632** is set to the value 0.0 s, the direct current brake is controlled by the Start clockwise and Start anticlockwise signals. The time monitoring and limitation by *Braking Time* **632** are deactivated. The braking current flows up to the logical status 0 (low) of the controller release (S1IND).

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
632	Braking Time	0.0 s	200.0 s	10.0 s

To avoid current surges, which can possibly lead to a fault switch-off of the frequency inverter, a direct current may only be impressed into the motor after the motor has been demagnetized. As the demagnetization time depends on the motor used, it can be set with the parameter *Demagnetizing Time* **633**.
The selected demagnetizing time should be approximately three times the *Act. Rotor Time Constant* **227**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
633	Demagnetizing Time	0.1 s	30.0 s	5.0 s

The selected stopping behavior is supplemented by a current controller to control the direct current brake. The PI controller checks the current impression of the set *Braking Current* **631**. The proportional and integrating parts of current controller can be adjusted via parameters *Amplification* **634** and *Integral Time* **635**, respectively. The control functions can be deactivated by setting the parameters to 0.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
634	Amplification	0.00	10.00	1.00
635	Integral Time	0 ms	1000 ms	50 ms

11.4 Auto Start

The Auto Start function is suitable for applications which permit a start at mains voltage by their function. By activation of the auto-start function via parameter *Operation Mode* **651**, the frequency inverter accelerates the drive after connection of the mains voltage. The controller release signal and the start command are necessary according to the regulations. When the motor is switched on, it is accelerated according to the parameterization and the reference value signal.

Operation mode **651**	Function
0 - Off	The drive is accelerated, after application of the mains voltage, as soon as the controller enabling signal and the start command are switched from stop to start (edge evaluation).
1 - Switched on	The drive is accelerated by the frequency inverter as soon as the mains voltage is applied (level evaluation).

Warning! Comply with standard EN 60204 and VDE provision 0100 part 227 and provision 0113, in particular Sections 5.4, protection against automatic restart after main line voltage failure and voltage recovery, and Section 5.5, undervoltage protection.
Appropriate measures must be taken to exclude any risk for staff, machines and production goods.
In addition to that, all specific regulations relevant to the application as well as all national directives are to be complied with.

11.5 Search Run

The synchronization to a rotating drive is necessary in applications which drive the motor by their behavior or in which the drive is still rotating after a fault switch-off. Via *Operation Mode* **645** = Search Run, the motor speed is synchronized to the current motor speed without an "Overcurrent" fault message. After this, the motor is accelerated to the reference speed at the set acceleration. This synchronization function determines the current rotary frequency of the drive via a search run in operation modes 1 to 5.
The synchronization in operation modes 10 to 15 is accelerated by short test impulses. Rotary frequencies of up to 250 Hz are determined within 100 ms to 300 ms. For higher frequencies, a wrong frequency is determined and the synchronization fails. In the "Quick synchronization" operation modes, the search run cannot determine whether an synchronization attempt has failed.

Operation mode 645		Function
0 -	Off	The synchronization to a rotating drive is deactivated.
1 -	Search direction acc. to specified reference value	The search direction is defined by the sign in front of the reference value. If a positive reference value (clockwise field of rotation) is entered, the search is in a positive direction (clockwise field of rotation), with a negative reference value, the search is in a negative direction (anticlockwise field of rotation).
2 -	First clockwise, then anti-clockwise, DCB	The first attempt is to synchronize to the drive in positive direction (clockwise field of rotation). If this attempt fails, it is tried to synchronize to the drive in negative direction (anticlockwise field of rotation).
3 -	First anti-clockwise, then clockwise, DCB	The first attempt is to synchronize to the drive in negative direction (anticlockwise field of rotation). If this attempt fails, it is tried to synchronize to the drive in positive direction (clockwise field of rotation).
4 -	Clockwise only, DCB	Synchronization to the drive is only done in positive direction (clockwise field of rotation).
5 -	Anti-clockwise only, DCB	Synchronization to the drive is only done in negative direction (anticlockwise field of rotation).
10 -	Quick Synchronization	An attempt is made to synchronize to the drive in positive direction (clockwise field of rotation) and in negative direction (anticlockwise field of rotation).
11 -	Quick Synch. acc. to Preset Value	The search direction is defined by the sign in front of the reference value. If a positive reference value (clockwise field of rotation) is entered, the search is in a positive direction (clockwise field of rotation), with a negative reference value, the search is in a negative direction (anticlockwise field of rotation).
14 -	Quick Sync., Clockwise Only	Synchronization to the drive is only done in positive direction (clockwise field of rotation).
15 -	Quick Sync., Anticlockwise Only	Synchronization to the drive is only done in negative direction (anticlockwise field of rotation).

Operation modes 1, 4 and 5 define a direction of rotation for the search run and avoid a deviating direction. The search run can accelerate drives by checking the rotary frequency if the drives have a low moment of inertia and/or a small load moment.
In operation modes 10 to 15, it cannot be ruled out that a wrong direction of rotation is determined in quick synchronization. For example, a frequency not equal to zero may be determined although the drive is at a standstill. If there is no overcurrent, the drive is accelerated accordingly. The direction of rotation is defined in operation modes 11, 14 and 15.

The synchronization changes the parameterized starting behavior of the selected configuration. First, the start command activates the search run in order to determine the rotary frequency of the drive. In operation modes 1 to 5, the *Current / Rated motor current* **647** is used for synchronization as a percentage of the *Rated current* **371**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
647	Current / Rated Motor Current	1.00 %	100.00 %	70.00 %

The sensor-less control is extended for the search run by a PI-Controller, which regulates the parameterized *Current / Rated Motor Current* **647**. The proportional and integrating part of the current controller can be set via the parameters *Amplification* **648** and *Integral Time* **649**. The control functions can be deactivated by setting the parameters to 0.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
648	Amplification	0.00	10.00	1.00
649	Integral Time	0 ms	1000 ms	20 ms

If the parameter for synchronization *Operation Mode* **645** was set to operation mode 1 to 5 (search run), the search run is not started before the *Demagnetizing Time* **633** has elapsed.

If synchronization to the drive is not possible, the *Braking Current* **631** is impressed into the motor in operation modes 1 to 5 for the duration of the *Break.-Time after Search Run* **646**. The impression of the direct current set in the parameters of the direct current brake results in the motor heating up and should only be done for a short period in the case of internally ventilated motors.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
646	Break. Time after Search Run	0.0 s	200.0 s	10.0 s

11.6 Positioning

Positioning is done in operation mode "Reference positioning" via the definition of the positioning distance or in operation mode "Axle positioning" via the definition of the position angle.
Reference positioning uses a digital reference signal from a selectable signal source for positioning the drive independent of the speed.
Axle positioning uses a digital reference signal from a speed sensor.
The function "Reference positioning" is available in configurations 110, 410 and 210 and is activated by selecting operation mode 1 for parameter *Operation Mode* **458**.
The function "Axle positioning" is available in configuration 210 (Operation mode 210 for parameter *Configuration* **30**) and is activated by selecting operation mode 2 for parameter *Operation Mode* **458**.

Operation mode **458**	Function
0 - Off	Positioning switched off.
1 - Reference positioning	Positioning from reference point via definition of positioning distance (rotations). The reference point is acquired via a *Signal Source* **459**. Available in Configuration: 110, 210, 410.
2 - Axle Positioning	Reference positioning via definition of the positioning angle, reference signal from speed sensor. Available in Configuration: 210.

11.6.1 Reference Positioning

The feedback of the current position is referred to the revolutions of the motors relative to the time of the reference signal. The accuracy of the positioning for the application to be realized is dependent on the current *Actual Frequency* **241**, the *Deceleration (Clockwise)* **421**, the *No. of Pole Pairs* **373**, the selected *Positioning distance* **460** and the parameterized control behavior.

The distance between the reference point and the required position is to be defined in motor revolutions. The calculation of the distance covered is done with the selected *Positioning* d*istance* **460** according to the application.
The setting 0.000 U for the *Positioning* d*istance* **460** causes an immediate stop of the drive according to the selected stopping behavior for *Operation Mode* **630**.

Parameter		**Settings**		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
460	Positioning Distance	0.000 U	1000000.000 U	0.000 U

The actual value parameter *Rotations* **470** facilitates the setting and optimization of the function. The revolutions of the motor displayed should correspond to the *Positioning distance* **460** at the required position.

The minimum number of revolutions needed until the required position is reached depends on the *Actual Frequency* **241** and *Deceleration* (*Clockwise*) **421** (or *Deceleration Anticlockwise* **423**) as well as the *No. of Pole Pairs* **373** of the motor.

$$U_{min} = \frac{f^2}{2 \cdot a \cdot p}$$

U_{min} = min. number of rotations
f = *Actual frequency* **241**
a = *Deceleration* **421 (423)**
p = *No. of Pole Pairs* **373** of motor

Example: f = 20 Hz, a = 5 Hz/s, p = 2 ⇒ U_{min} = 20
At an actual frequency of 20 Hz and a deceleration of 5 Hz/s, at least 20 revolutions are required until the drive stops at the required position. This is the minimum value for the *Positioning distance* **460**, a shorter positioning distance is not possible. If the number of revolutions to the required position is to be lower, either the frequency must be reduced, the deceleration must be increased or the reference point must be shifted.

The digital signal for acquisition of the reference point and the logic link can be selected by the parameter *Signal Sources* **459**. The link of the digital inputs S2IND, S3IND and S6IND to further functions is to be checked according to selected *Configuration* **30** (e.g., in configurations 110 and 210, digital input S2IND is linked to the function "Start of clockwise operation").
The signals for positioning and a stopping behavior should not be assigned to the same digital input.

Signal Sources **459**	**Function**
2 - S2IND, falling edge	The positioning starts with the change of the logic signal from 1 (HIGH) to 0 (LOW) at the reference point.
3 - S3IND, falling edge	
6 - S6IND, falling edge	
1x - SxIND, rising edge	The positioning starts with the change of the logic signal from 0 (LOW) to 1 (HIGH).
2x - SxIND, rising/falling edge	The positioning begins with the change of the logic signal.

The acquisition of the reference position via a digital signal can be influenced by a variable dead time while the control command is read and processed. The signal propagation time is compensated by a positive value for the *Signal correction* **461**. If a negative signal correction is set, processing of the digital signal is delayed.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
461	Signal Correction	-327.68 ms	+327.67 ms	0.00 ms

The influences on the positioning which depend on the operating point can be corrected empirically via the parameter *Load correction* **462**. If the required position is not reached, the delay interval is increased by a positive load correction value. The distance between the reference point and the required position is extended. Negative values accelerate the braking process and reduce the positioning distance. The limit of the negative signal correction results from the application and the *Positioning distance* **460**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
462	Load Correction	-32768	+32767	0

The behavior of the positioning after the required position of the drive is reached can be defined via the parameter *Activity after positioning* **463**.

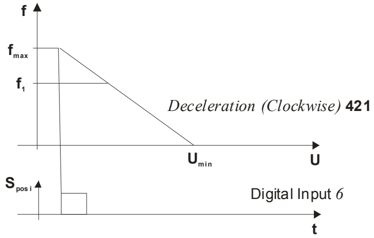
Activity after positioning **463**	**Function**
0 - End of positioning	The drive is stopped with the stopping behavior of *Operation Mode* **630**.
1 - Wait for positioning signal	The drive is stopped until the next signal edge; with a new edge of the position signal, it is accelerated in the previous direction of rotation.
2 - Reversal by new edge	The drive is held until the next signal edge; with a new edge of the position signal, it is accelerated in the opposite direction of rotation.
3 - Positioning; off	The drive is stopped and the power output stage of the inverter is switched off.
4 - Start by time control	The drive is stopped for the *Waiting Time* **464**; after the waiting time, it is accelerated in the previous direction of rotation.
5 - Reversal by time control	The drive is held for the *Waiting Time* **464**; after the waiting time, it is accelerated in the opposite direction of rotation.

The position reached can be maintained for the *Waiting Time* **464**, then until the drive is accelerated according to operation mode 4 or 5.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
464	Waiting Time	0 ms	3600000 ms	0 ms

Positioning, Operation Mode 458 = 1

The diagram shows how the positioning to the set positioning distance is effected. The positioning distance remains constant at different frequency values. At the reference point, the position signal S_{Posi} is generated. Starting from frequency f_{max}, the positioning is effected at the set *Deceleration (Clockwise)* **421**. At a lower frequency value f_1, the frequency remains constant for some time before the drive is stopped at the set deceleration.
If, during acceleration or deceleration of the machine, positioning is started by the signal S_{Posi}, the frequency at the time of the positioning signal is maintained.



Examples of reference positioning as a function of the parameter settings selected.

- The reference point is registered according to the parameter *Signal Sources* **459** in operation mode 16–S6IND, rising edge by a signal on digital input 6.
- The *Positioning distance* **460** with parameter value 0.000U (default) defines a direct stop of the drive with the deceleration behavior selected in parameter *Operation Mode* **630** and the selected *Deceleration (Clockwise)* **421**. If a *Positioning distance* **460** is set, the positioning is effected at the set deceleration.
- The *Signal correction* **461** of the signal propagation time from the measurement point to the frequency inverter is not used if it is set to 0 ms.
- The *Load correction* **462** can compensate a faulty positioning by the load behavior. By default, this function is deactivated, i.e. set to 0.
- The *Activity after positioning* **463** is defined by operation mode 0–End of positioning.
- The *Waiting Time* **464** is not considered because operation mode 0 is selected for the parameter *Activity after positioning* **463**.
- The actual value *Rotations* **470** enables a direct comparison to the required *Positioning distance* **460**. In the case of deviations, a *Signal correction* **461** or *Load correction* **462** can be carried out.

11.6.2 Axle Positioning

For axle positioning a feedback system is mandatory. In most cases, an expansion module for the feedback evaluation is needed as well.. An optional expansion module and operating modes 1004 and 1104 for parameter *Operation mode speed sensor 2* **493** enable the evaluation of a speed sensor signal with reference impulse. The adjustment of this parameter is described in the manual of the optional expansion module. The positioning is started if a start signal is received and the frequency drops below an adjustable frequency limit. The machine stops with the selected stopping behavior at the entered position angle.

To ensure the correct function of the axle positioning, the speed controller should be optimized after the guided commissioning. This is described in the chapter "Speed Controller".

Via the parameter *Reference orientation* **469**, the angle between the reference point and the required position is entered.
If this value is changed while the machine is at a standstill, the positioning operation is carried out again at a frequency of 0.5 Hz. For this, a stopping behavior must be selected for the parameter *Operation Mode* **630** which impresses a starting current either permanently when the drive is at a standstill or for the stopping time (refer to chapter „Stopping Behavior").

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
469	Reference Orientation	0.0°	359.9°	0.0°

Caution! During the positioning operation, the direction of rotation of the drive may change, regardless of whether the command Start clockwise or Start anticlockwise was activated.
Make sure that the change of the direction of rotation cannot result in any personal or material damage.

The positioning is started by a start command from a signal source (e.g. digital input) which must be assigned to the parameter *Start Positioning of Axle* **37**. The signal source can be selected from the operation modes for digital inputs described in chapter "Digital Inputs".
The positioning starts on condition that the *Actual Frequency* **241** of the output signal is lower than the value entered in parameter *Positioning Frequency* **471**. Due to a stopping behavior, the actual frequency drops below the positioning frequency.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
471	Positioning Frequency	1.00 Hz	50.00 Hz	50.00 Hz

Via the parameter *Max. positional error* **472**, the maximum permissible deviation from the *Reference orientation* **469** can be set.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
472	Max positional error	0.1°	90.0°	3.0°

Via parameter *time constant positioning contr.* **479**, the time constant for controlling the positional error can be set. The value of the time constant should be increased if oscillations of the drive around the reference orientation occur during the positioning.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
479	Time constant positioning controller	1.00 ms	9999.99 ms	20.00 ms

To make sure that the set position is maintained if a load torque is applied, a stopping behavior should be selected for parameter *Operation Mode* **630** which impresses a starting current either permanently when the drive is at a standstill or for the stopping time.

The status message „60-Arrived at desired Position" which is displayed when the reference orientation is reached can be assigned to a digital output. The message is output on the following conditions:

- Operation mode 2 (axle positioning) for parameter *Operation Mode* **458** is selected.
- The controller release signal at digital input S1IND is switched on.
- *Start Positioning of Axle* **37** is activated.
- The speed sensor monitoring is activated, i.e. operation mode 2 (error message) for parameter *Operation Mode* **760** of the speed sensor monitoring is selected.
- Operation mode 1004 or 1104 (quadruple evaluation with reference impulse) is selected for the speed sensor input.
- The *Actual Frequency* **241** is lower than 1 Hz.
- The deviation of the current position from the reference orientation is lower than the *Max positional error* **472**.

The current position after *Start Positioning of Axle* **37** is recognized by the frequency inverter as follows:

- During commissioning, after switching on the frequency inverter, a search mode is performed for 3 rotations at a rotational frequency of 1 Hz in order to detect the reference signal. As soon as the reference signal was recognized twice, the drive is positioned to the *Reference orientation* **469**.
- If the motor was already rotating before axle positioning was enabled, the positioning to the *Reference orientation* **469** is performed without search mode because the position of the reference point was already detected by the frequency inverter.

If the positioning is carried out, after controller enabling and start command, when the motor is at a **standstill**:

- The motor is positioned clockwise to the reference orientation if the value for the reference orientation is higher than the value adjusted before.
- The motor is positioned anticlockwise to the reference orientation if the value for the reference orientation is lower than the value adjusted before.

The sense of rotation during the positioning is independent of whether Start Clockwise or Start Anticlockwise was activated.

The time required until the reference orientation is reached depends on:

- Actual Frequency
- Frequency ramp for deceleration
- Rotational angle to reference orientation
- Max positional error
- Time constant positioning controller

12 Error and warning behavior

Operation of the frequency inverter and the connected load are monitored continuously. The monitoring functions are to be parameterized with the corresponding limit values specific to the application. If the limits were set below the switch-off limit of the frequency inverter, a fault switch-off can be prevented by suitable measures if a warning message is issued.
The warning message is displayed by the LED's of the frequency inverter and can be read out on the control unit via the parameter *Warnings* **269** or output via one of the digital control outputs.

12.1 Overload Ixt

The admissible load behavior depends on various technical data of the frequency inverters and the ambient conditions.
The selected *Switching Frequency* **400** defines the nominal current and the available overload for one second and sixty seconds, respectively. The *Warning Limit Short-Term Ixt* **405** and *Warning Limit Long-Term Ixt* **406** are to be parameterized accordingly.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
405	Warning Limit Short Term Ixt	6 %	100 %	80 %
406	Warning Limit Long Term Ixt	6 %	100 %	80 %

12.2 Temperature

The ambient conditions and the power dissipation at the current operating point result in the frequency inverter heating up. In order to avoid a fault switch-off of the frequency inverter, the *Warning Limit Heat Sink Temperature* **407** for the heat sink temperature limit and the *Warning Limit Inside Temperature* **408** as an internal temperature limit are to be parameterized. The temperature value at which a warning message is output is calculated from the type-dependent temperature limit minus the adjusted warning limit.
The switch-off limits of the frequency inverter are an internal temperature of 65 °C and a heat sink temperature range of 80°C up to 90°C.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
407	Warning Limit Heat Sink Temp.	-25 °C	0 °C	-5 °C
408	Warning Limit Inside Temp.	-25 °C	0 °C	-5 °C

12.3 Controller Status

The intervention of a controller can be indicated via the control unit or LEDs. The selected control method and the matching monitoring functions prevent a switch-off of the frequency inverter. The intervention of the function changes the operating behavior of the application and can be displayed by the status messages with parameter *Controller Status* **275**. The limit values and events which result in the intervention by the corresponding controller are described in the corresponding chapters.

The behavior during the intervention of a controller is configured with the parameter *Controller Status Message* **409**.

Operation mode 409		Function
0 -	No Message	The intervention of a controller is not reported. The controllers influencing the operating behavior are displayed in the *Controller status* **275** parameter.
1 –	Warning Status	The limitation by a controller is displayed as a warning by the control unit.
11 –	Warning Status and LED	The limitation by a controller is displayed as a warning by the control unit and the LEDs.

Please refer to chapter 14.3.7 Warning Mask and chapter 20.3 Controller Status for a list of controllers and further possibilities to evaluate the controller states.

12.4 IDC Compensation Limit

At the output of the frequency inverter a DC component can occur in the output current due to unbalances. This DC voltage component can be compensated by the frequency inverter. The maximum output voltage of the compensation is set with parameter *IDC Compensation Limit* **415**. If a higher voltage than the set limit is needed for the compensation of a DC voltage component, error "F1301 IDC COMPENSATION" is triggered.
If this fault occurs, it should be checked whether the load is defective. Possibly the voltage limit may have to be increased.
If the parameter *IDC Compensation Limit* **415** is reduced to zero, the DC compensation is deactivated.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
415	IDC Compensation Limit	0.0 V	1.5 V	1.5 [1)] 0.0 [2)]

The factory setting of parameter *Limit IDC compensation* **415** depends on the setting of parameter *Configuration* **30**:
[1)] Configurations 1xx
[2)] Configurations 2xx / 4xx

12.5 Frequency Switch-Off Limit

The maximum permissible output frequency of the frequency inverter can be set with parameter *Frequency Switch-Off Limit* **417**. If this frequency limit is exceeded by the *Stator frequency* **210** or the *Actual Frequency* **241**, the frequency inverter is switched off and the fault message "F1100" is displayed.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
417	Frequency Switch-Off Limit	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz

12.6 Motor Temperature

The configuration of the control terminals includes the monitoring of the motor temperature. The monitoring function can be parameterized specific to the application via the parameter *Motor Temp. Operation Mode* **570**. The integration into the application is improved by an operating mode with a delayed switch-off.

Operation mode 570		Function
0 -	Off	Motor temperature monitoring switched off.
1 -	Therm.-Cont.: Warning only	The critical point of operation is displayed by the control unit and parameter *Warnings* **269**.
2 -	Error Switch-Off	The fault switch-off is displayed by message F0400. The fault switch-off can be acknowledged via the control unit or the digital input.
3 -	Therm.-Cont.: Err.Switch-Off 1 min delayed	The fault switch-off according to operation mode 2 is delayed by one minute.
4 -	Therm.-Cont.: Err.Switch-Off 5 min delayed	The fault switch-off according to operation mode 2 is delayed by five minutes.
5 -	Therm.-Cont.: Err.Switch-Off 10 min delayed	The fault switch-off according to operation mode 2 is delayed by ten minutes.

Via parameter *Therm. Contact* **204**, a digital input signal can be linked to the *Motor Temp. Operation Mode* **570**.

12.7 Phase Failure

A failure of one of the three motor or mains can lead to a damage in the frequency inverter, the motor and the mechanical drive components. To prevent damage to these components, the phases failure is monitored. Parameter *Phase supervision* **576** allows to adjust the behavior in case of a failure.

Phase Supervision **576**		Function
10 -	Mains Error Switch-Off	In the case of a phase failure, the fault switch-off takes place after 5 minutes, fault F0703 is displayed. During this time, the warning message A0100 is displayed.
11 -	Mains & Motor Error Switch-Off	The phase supervision switches the frequency inverter off: – immediately, in the case of a motor phase failure; fault message F0403 is displayed, – after 5 minutes in the case of a mains phase failure; fault message F0703 is displayed.
20 -	Mains Shutdown	In the case of a mains phase failure, the drive is stopped after 5 minutes, fault F0703 is displayed.
21 -	Mains & Motor Shutdown	The drive is stopped: – immediately, in the case of a motor phase failure, – after 5 minutes in the case of a mains phase failure.

12.8 Automatic Error Acknowledgment

The automatic error acknowledgment enables acknowledgment of the faults Overcurrent F0500, Overcurrent F0507 and Overvoltage F0700 without intervention by an overriding control system or the user. If one of the these errors occurs, the frequency inverter switches off the power semi-conductors and waits for the time defined by the parameter *Restart Delay* **579**. If the error must be acknowledged, the speed of the machine is determined via the quick catching function and it is synchronized to the rotating machine. The automatic error acknowledgment makes use of quick catching operation mode, regardless of the parameter for search run, *Operation Mode* **645**. The information given on this function in chapter "Search run" must be observed.
With parameter *Allowed No. of Auto-Acknowl.* **578**, you can define the number of automatic error acknowledgements which are permitted within 10 minutes.

An acknowledgement repeated above the permissible number within 10 minutes will result in the frequency inverter being switched off. The errors Overcurrent F0500, Overcurrent F0507 and Overvoltage F0700 have separate error acknowledgement counters.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
578	Allowed No. of Auto-Acknowl.	0	20	5
579	Restart Delay	0 ms	1000 ms	20 ms

13 Reference Values

The ACT series frequency inverters can be configured specific to the application and enable customer-specific adaptation of the module hardware and software structure.

13.1 Frequency Limits

The output frequency of the frequency inverter and thus the speed setting range are defined by the parameters *Minimum Frequency* **418** and *Maximum Frequency* **419**. The corresponding control methods use these two limit values for scaling and calculating the frequency.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
418	Minimum Frequency	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	3.50 Hz [1)] 0.00 Hz [2)]
419	Maximum Frequency	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	50.00 Hz

The factory setting is dependend on the adjustment of parameter *Configuration* **30**:
[1)] 3.5 Hz in configurations 1xx, 4xx
[2)] 0.00 Hz in configurations 2xx

13.2 Slip Frequency

The torque-forming current component and thus the slip frequency of the 3-phase machine depend on the required torque in the case of the field-oriented control methods. The field-oriented control method also includes the parameter *Slip Frequency* **719** to limit the torque in the calculation of the machine model. The rated slip calculated from the rated motor parameters is limited in accordance with the *Slip Frequency* **719** which is parameterized as a percentage.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
719	Slip Frequency	0 %	10000 %	250 %

13.3 Percentage Value Limits

The setting range of the percentages is defined by the parameters *Minimum Reference Percentage* **518 a**nd *Maximum Reference Percentage* **519**. The relevant control methods use these two limit values for scaling and calculating the frequency.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
518	Minimum Reference Percentage	0.00 %	300.00 %	0.00 %
519	Maximum Reference Percentage	0.00 %	300.00 %	100.00 %

13.4 Frequency Reference Channel

The various functions for the defining the reference frequency are connected via the frequency reference value channel. The *Reference Frequency Source* **475** determines the additive assignment of the available reference value sources depending on the hardware installed.

Reference frequency source **475**	**Function**
1 - Abs. Analog Value MFI1A	Reference value source is the multifunctional input 1 in *Operation Mode* **452** - Analog signal.
10 - Abs. Val. Fixed Frequency (FF)	The fixed frequency according to the *Fixed Frequency Change-Over 1* **66** and *Fixed frequency change-over 2* **67** as well as the current data set.
11 - Abs. Value MFI1A + FF	Combination of the operation modes 10 and 1.
20 - Abs. Value Motorpoti (MP)	Reference value source is the function *Frequency Motorpoti Up* **62** and *Frequency Motorpoti Down* **63**.
21 - Abs. Value MFI1A + MP	Combination of the operation modes 20 and 1.
30 - Abs.Val. Speed Sensor 1 (F1)	The frequency signals in *Operation Mode* **490** are evaluated as a reference value.
31 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + F1	Combination of the operation modes 30 and 1.
32 - Abs. Repetition Frequency Input (F3)	The frequency signal on the digital input according to *Operation mode* **496** for the repetition frequency input.
33 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + F3	Combination of operation modes 1 and 32.
40 - Abs. Value Motorpoti (KP)	The KP 500 control unit is the reference value source, with keys ▲ for increasing the frequency and ▼ for reducing the frequency.
41 - Abs. Value MFI1A + KP	Combination of the operation modes 40 and 1.
80 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + FF + KP + F1 + F3 + (EM-S1INA)1)	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 40, 32 (+ analog input extension module)1).
81 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + FF + KP + F1 + F3 + (EM-S1INA)1)	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 40, 30, 32 (+ analog input extension module)1).
82 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + FF + KP + F3 + (F2)2) + (EM-S1INA)1)	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 40, 32 (+ absolute amount speed sensor 2 (F2))2) (+ analog input extension module)1.
89 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + FF + KP + F1 + F3 + (F2)2) + (EM-S1INA)1)	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 40, 30, 32(+ absolute amount speed sensor 2 (F2))2) (+ analog input extension module)1).
90 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + FF + MP + F3 + (EM-S1INA)1)	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 20, 32 (+ analog input extension module)1).
91 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + FF + MP + F1 + F3+ (EM-S1INA)1)	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 20, 30, 32 (+ analog input extension module)1).
92 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + FF + MP + F3 + (F2)2) + (EM-S1INA)1)	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 20, 32 (+ absolute amount speed sensor 2 (F2))2) (+ analog input extension module)1).
99 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + FF + MP + F1 + F3 + (F2)2) + (EM-S1INA)1)	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 20, 30, 32 (+ absolute amount speed sensor 2 (F2))2) (+ analog input extension module)1).
101 to 199	Operation modes with signs (+/-).

1) The reference value source is only available if an extension module with analog input is connected. For information, refer to the extension module operating instructions.

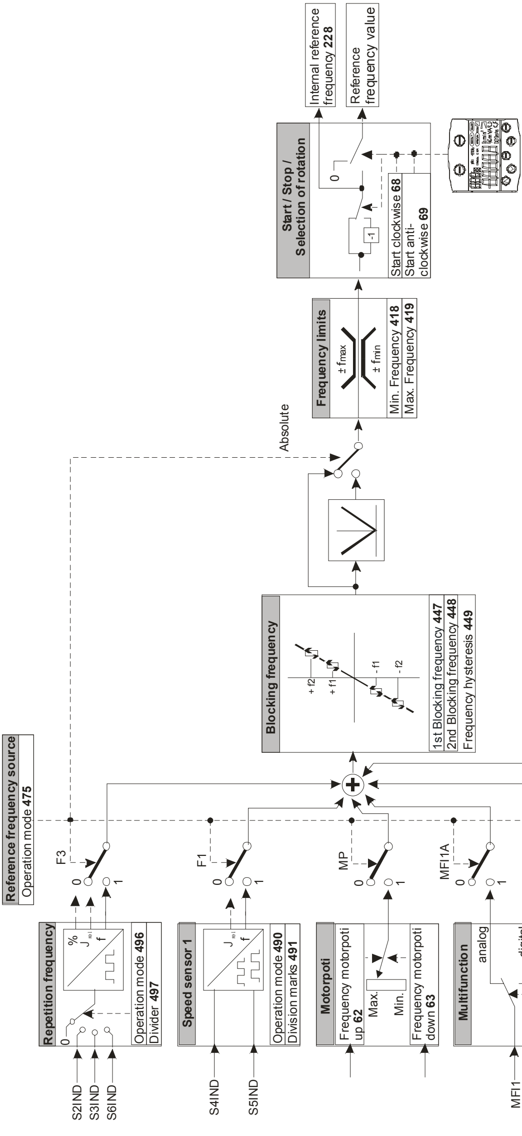
2) The reference value source is only available if an extension module with speed sensor input is connected. For information, refer to the extension module operating instructions.

13.4.1 Block Diagram

The following table describes the software switches shown in the circuit diagram as a function of the selected *Reference Frequency Source* **475**.

Switch position on circuit diagram							
Operation mode	**MFI1A**	**FF**	**MP**	**F1**	**F3**	**KP**	**Sign**
1	1						Abs. value
10		1					Abs. value
11	1	1					Abs. value
20			1				Abs. value
21	1		1				Abs. value
30				1			Abs. value
31	1			1			Abs. value
32					1		Abs. value
33	1				1		Abs. value
40						1	Abs. value
41	1					1	Abs. value
80	1	1			1	1	Abs. value
81	1	1		1	1	1	Abs. value
82	1	1			1	1	Abs. value
89	1	1		1	1	1	Abs. value
90	1	1	1		1		Abs. value
91	1	1	1	1	1		Abs. value
92	1	1	1		1		Abs. value
99	1	1	1	1	1		Abs. value
101	1						+/-
110		1					+/-
111	1	1					+/-
120			1				+/-
121	1		1				+/-
130				1			+/-
131	1			1			+/-
132					1		+/-
133	1				1		+/-
140						1	+/-
141	1					1	+/-
180	1	1			1	1	+/-
181	1	1		1	1	1	+/-
182	1	1			1	1	+/-
189	1	1		1	1	1	+/-
190	1	1	1		1		+/-
191	1	1	1	1	1		+/-
192	1	1	1		1		+/-
199	1	1	1	1	1		+/-

Circuit diagram of frequency reference value channel


Internal reference frequency 228
Reference frequency value
Start / Stop / Selection of rotation
0
-1
Start clockwise 68
Start anti-clockwise 69
Frequency limits
± fmax
± fmin
Min. Frequency 418
Max. Frequency 419
Absolute
Blocking frequency
+ f2
+ f1
- f1
- f2
1st Blocking frequency 447
2nd Blocking frequency 448
Frequency hysteresis 449
Reference frequency source
Operation mode 475
F3
F1
MP
MFI1A
FF
KP
0
1
Repetition frequency
%
f
Operation mode 496
Divider 497
S2IND
S3IND
S6IND
Speed sensor 1
f
Operation mode 490
Division marks 491
S4IND
S5IND
Motorpoti
Frequency motorpoti up 62
Max.
Min.
Frequency motorpoti down 63
Multifunction
analog
digital
Operation mode 452
MFI1
Fixed frequency
Change-over 1 66
Change-over 2 67
Fixed frequency 1 480
Fixed frequency 2 481
Fixed frequency 3 482
Fixed frequency 4 483
Motorpoti (KP)
Frequency-Motorpoti up
Max
Min.
Frequeny-Motorpoti down
Key
Key

13.5 Reference Percentage Channel

The reference percentage channel combines various signal sources for definition of the reference values. The percentage scaling facilitates integration into the application, taking various process parameters into account.
The *Reference Percentage Source* **476** determines the additive assignment of the available reference value sources depending on the hardware installed.

reference percentage source **476**	**Function**
1 - Abs. Analog Value MFI1A	Reference value source is the multifunctional input 1 in *Operation Mode* **452** - Analog signal.
10 - Abs. Fix. Perc. Val. (FP)	The percentage according to *Fixed Percent Change-Over 1* **75**, *Fixed Percent Change-Over 2* **76** and the current data set.
11 - Abs. Value MFI1A + FP	Combination of operation modes 1 and 10.
20 - Abs. Value Motorpoti (MP)	Reference value source is the function *Percent Motorpoti Up* **72** and *Percent Motorpoti Down* **73.**
21 - Abs. Value MFI1A + MP	Combination of operation modes 1 and 20.
32 - Abs. Repetition Frequency Input (F3)	The frequency signal on the digital input according to *Operation Mode* **496** of the repetition frequency input.
33 - Abs. Val. MFI1A + F3	Combination of operation modes 1 and 32.
90 - Abs. Value MFI1A + FP + MP + F3 (+ EM-S1INA) **1)**	Combination of the operation modes 1, 10, 20, 32 (+ analog input of an extension module) **1)**.
101 to 190	Operation modes with signs (+/-).

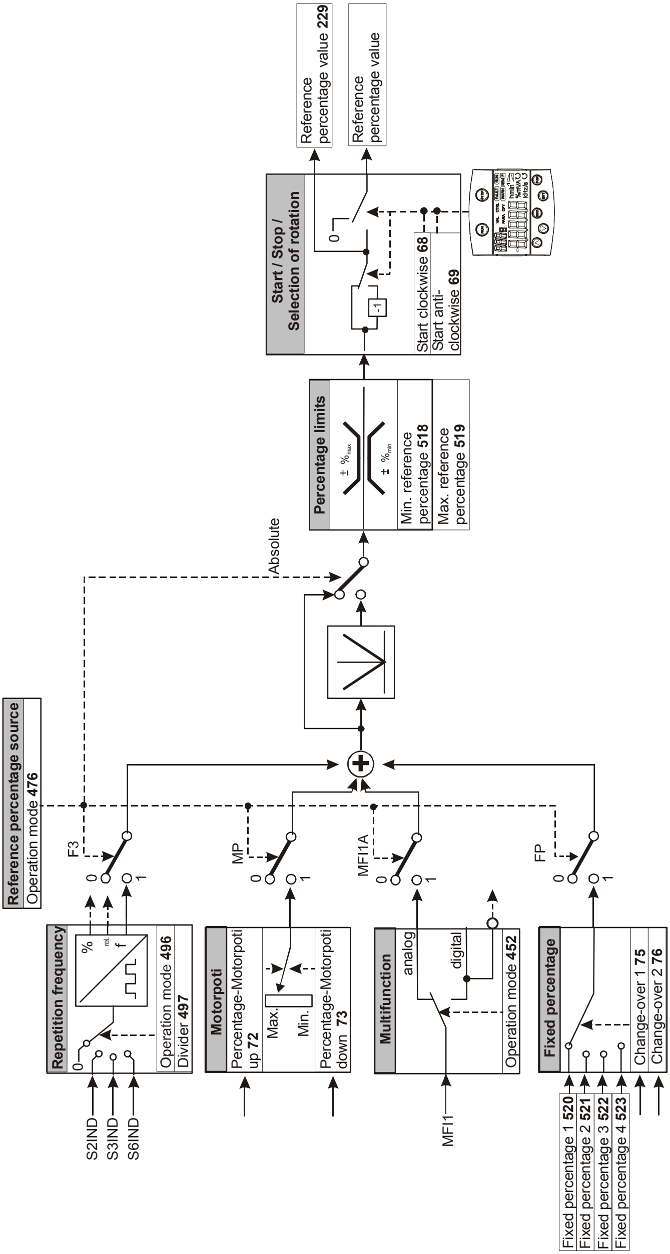
1) The reference value source is only available if an optional extension module with analog input is connected. For information, refer to the extension module operating instructions.

13.5.1 Block Diagram

The following table describes the software switches shown in the circuit diagram as a function of the selected *Reference Percentage Source* **476**.

Switch position on circuit diagram					
Operation mode	**MFI1A**	**FP**	**MP**	**F3**	**Sign**
1	1				Abs. value
10		1			Abs. value
11	1	1			Abs. value
20			1		Abs. value
21	1		1		Abs. value
32				1	Abs. value
33	1			1	Abs. value
90	1	1	1	1	Abs. value
101	1				+/-
110		1			+/-
111	1	1			+/-
120			1		+/-
121	1		1		+/-
132				1	+/-
133	1			1	+/-
190	1	1	1	1	+/-

Circuit diagram of percent reference value channel


Reference percentage source
Operation mode 476
Repetition frequency
%
rel.
f
Operation mode 496
Divider 497
S2IND
S3IND
S6IND
F3
0
1
Motorpoti
Percentage-Motorpoti up 72
Max.
Min.
Percentage-Motorpoti down 73
MP
Multifunction
analog
digital
Operation mode 452
MFI1
MFI1A
Fixed percentage
Change-over 1 75
Change-over 2 76
Fixed percentage 1 520
Fixed percentage 2 521
Fixed percentage 3 522
Fixed percentage 4 523
FP
Absolute
Percentage limits
± %max
± %min
Min. reference percentage 518
Max. reference percentage 519
Start / Stop / Selection of rotation
-1
0
Start clockwise 68
Start anti-clockwise 69
Reference percentage value 229
Reference percentage value

13.6 Fixed Reference Values

The fixed reference values are to be parameterized as fixed frequencies or fixed percentages according to the configuration and function.
The signs of the fixed reference values determine the direction of rotation. A positive sign means a clockwise rotation, a negative sign means an anticlockwise rotation. The direction can only be changed via the sign if the *Reference Frequency Source* **475** or *Reference Percentage Source* **476** is parameterized to an operation mode with sign (+/-). The direction of rotation can also be stated with the digital signal sources assigned to the parameters *Start Clockwise* **68** and *Start Anticlockwise* **69**.
The fixed reference values are to be parameterized in four data sets and are assigned to further sources via the reference value channel. The use of the functions *Data Set Change-Over 1* **70** and *Data Set Change-Over 2* **71** thus enables the setting of 16 fixed reference values.

13.6.1 Fixed Frequencies

The four fixed frequencies define reference values which are selected via the parameters *Fixed Frequency Change-Over 1* **66** and *Fixed Frequency Change-Over 2* **67**. The parameter *Reference Frequency Source* **475** defines the addition of the various sources in the reference frequency channel.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
480	Fixed Frequency 1	-999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz	0.00 Hz
481	Fixed Frequency 2	-999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz	10.00 Hz
482	Fixed Frequency 3	-999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz	25.00 Hz
483	Fixed Frequency 4	-999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz	50.00 Hz

By combining the logic states of the fixed frequency change-over modes 1 and 2, fixed frequencies 1 through 4 can be selected:

Fixed Frequency Control		
Fixed Frequency Change-Over 1 **66**	*Fixed Frequency Change-Over 2* **67**	Function / active fixed value
0	0	*Fixed Frequency 1* **480**
1	0	*Fixed Frequency 2* **481**
1	1	*Fixed Frequency 3* **482**
0	1	*Fixed Frequency 4* **483**

0 = contact open 1 = contact closed

13.6.2 JOG-Frequency

The JOG function forms part of the functions for controlling the drive mechanism via the control unit. Use the arrow keys to change the JOG frequency within the function. The frequency of the output signal is set to the entered value if the FUN key is pressed. The drive starts and the machine turns at the set *JOG-Frequency* **489**. If the JOG frequency has been changed using the arrow keys, this value is stored.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
489	JOG-Frequency	-999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz	5.00 Hz

13.6.3 Fixed Percentages

The four percentage values define reference values which are selected via the parameters *Fixed Percent Change-Over 1* **75** and *Fixed Percent Change-Over 2* **76**. The parameter *Reference Percentage Source* **476** defines the addition of the various sources in the reference percentage channel.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
520	Fixed Percentage 1	-300.00 %	300.00 %	0.00 %
521	Fixed Percentage 2	-300.00 %	300.00 %	20.00 %
522	Fixed Percentage 3	-300.00 %	300.00 %	50.00 %
523	Fixed Percentage 4	-300.00 %	300.00 %	100.00 %

By combining the logic states of the fixed percentage change-over modes 1 and 2, fixed frequencies 1 through 4 can be selected:

Fixed Percentage Control		
Fixed percentage value change-over 1 **75**	*Fixed percentage value change-over 2* **76**	Function / active fixed value
0	0	*Fixed Percentage* 1 **520**
1	0	*Fixed Percentage 2* **521**
1	1	*Fixed Percentage* 3 **522**
0	1	*Fixed Percentage* 4 **523**

0 = contact open 1 = contact closed

13.7 Frequency ramps

The ramps determine how fast the frequency value is changed if the reference value changes or after a start, stop or brake command. The maximum admissible ramp gradient can be selected according to the application and the current consumption of the motor.

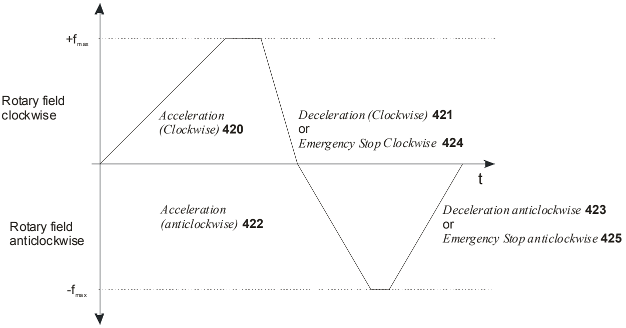
If the settings of the frequency ramps are identical for both directions of rotation, the parameterization via the parameters *Acceleration (Clockwise)* **420** and *Deceleration (Clockwise)* **421** is sufficient. The values of the frequency ramps are taken over for *Acceleration Anticlockwise* **422** and *Deceleration Anticlockwise* **423** if these have been parameterized to the factory setting of -0.01 Hz/s.

The parameter value of 0.00 Hz/s for the acceleration blocks the corresponding direction of rotation.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
420	Acceleration (Clockwise)	0.00 Hz/s	9999.99 Hz/s	5.00 Hz/s
421	Deceleration (Clockwise)	0.01 Hz/s	9999.99 Hz/s	5.00 Hz/s
422	Acceleration Anticlockwise	-0.01 Hz/s	9999.99 Hz/s	-0.01 Hz/s
423	Deceleration Anticlockwise	-0.01 Hz/s	9999.99 Hz/s	-0.01 Hz/s

The ramps for *Emergency Stop Clockwise* **424** and *Emergency Stop Anticlockwise* **425** of the drive to be activated via the parameter for stopping behavior *Operation Mode* **630** must be selected according to the application. The non-linear (S-shaped) course of the ramps is not active in the case of an emergency stop of the drive.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
424	Emergency Stop Clockwise	0.01 Hz/s	9999.99 Hz/s	5.00 Hz/s
425	Emergency Stop Anticlockwise	0.01 Hz/s	9999.99 Hz/s	5.00 Hz/s


+f$_{max}$
Rotary field clockwise
Acceleration (Clockwise) 420
Deceleration (Clockwise) 421 or Emergency Stop Clockwise 424
t
Acceleration (anticlockwise) 422
Rotary field anticlockwise
Deceleration anticlockwise 423 or Emergency Stop anticlockwise 425
-f$_{max}$

The parameter *Maximum Leading* **426** limits the difference between the output of the ramp and the current actual value of the drive. The set maximum deviation is a dead time for the control system which should be kept as low as possible.
In case the drive is loaded heavily and high acceleration and deceleration values are selected it is possible, that a set controller limit is reached while the drive is accelerated or decelerated. In this case, the drive cannot follow the defined acceleration or deceleration ramps. With *Maximum Leading* **426**, you can limit the max. leading of the ramp.

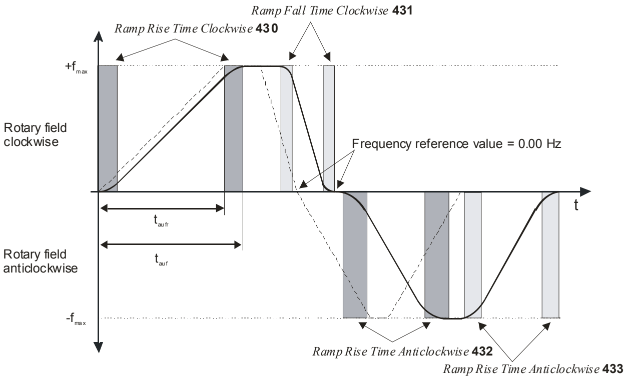
Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
426	Maximum Leading	0.01 Hz	999.99 Hz	5.00 Hz

Example: Fixed value at ramp output = 20 Hz, current actual value of drive = 15 Hz, selected *Maximum Leading* **426** = 5 Hz
The frequency at the ramp output is increased to 15 Hz only and it is not increased further. The difference (leading) between the frequency value at the ramp output and the current actual frequency of the drive is limited to 5 Hz in this way.

The load occurring in a linear acceleration of the drive is reduced by the adjustable modification speeds (S curve). The non-linear course of the frequency is defined as a ramp and states the time range in which the frequency is to be guided to the set ramp. The values set with parameters 420 to 423 are maintained regardless of the selected ramp times.

Setting the ramp time to 0 ms deactivates the function S curve and enables the use of the linear ramps. The data set change-over of the parameters within an acceleration phase of the drive demands the defined take-over of the values. The controller calculates the values required in order to reach the reference value from the ratio of the acceleration to the ramp time and uses it until the acceleration phase is finished. With this method, exceeding the reference values is avoided and a data set change-over between extremely deviating values becomes possible.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
430	Ramp Rise Time Clockwise	0 ms	65000 ms	0 ms
431	Ramp Fall Time Clockwise	0 ms	65000 ms	0 ms
432	Ramp Rise Time Anticlockwise	0 ms	65000 ms	0 ms
433	Ramp Rise Time Anticlockwise	0 ms	65000 ms	0 ms



Example: Calculation of the acceleration time in clockwise rotation at an acceleration from 20 Hz to 50 Hz (fmax) and an acceleration ramp of 2 Hz/s for parameter *Acceleration (Clockwise)* **420**. The parameter *Ramp Rise Time Clockwise* **430** is set to 100 ms.

$$t_{aufr} = \frac{\Delta f}{a_r}$$

$$t_{aufr} = \frac{50\,\mathrm{Hz} - 20\,\mathrm{Hz}}{2\,\mathrm{Hz/s}} = 15\,\mathrm{s}$$

$$t_{auf} = t_{aufr} + t_{Vr}$$

$$t_{auf} = 15\,\mathrm{s} + 100\,\mathrm{ms} = 15.1\,\mathrm{s}$$

t_{aufr} = acceleration time clockwise rotary field

Δf = change of frequency acceleration ramp

a_r = Acceleration Clockwise

t_{Vr} = Ramp Rise Time Clockwise

t_{auf} = acceleration time + ramp rise time

13.8 Percentage Value Ramps

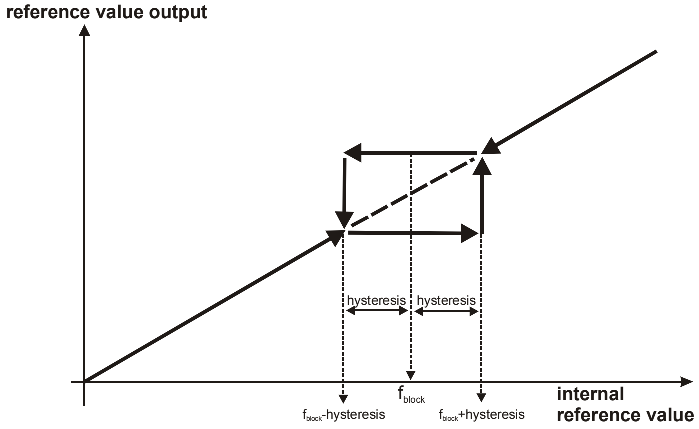
The percentage value ramps scale the change of the reference value (in percent) for the corresponding input function. The acceleration and deceleration of the drive are parameterized via the frequency ramps.
The behavior *Gradient Percentage Ramp* **477** corresponds to a function which takes the time response of the drive system into account. If the parameter is set to 0 %/s, this function is deactivated and a direct reference value modification for the following function is obtained.
The default value depends on the parameter *Configuration* **30**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
477	Gradient Percentage Ramp	0 %/s	60.000 %/s	x %/s

13.9 Block Frequencies

In certain applications, it is necessary to fade out reference frequencies. In this way, resonance points of the system as stationary operating points are avoided. The parameters *1st Blocking Frequency* **447** and *2nd Blocking Frequency* **448** with the parameter *Frequency Hysteresis* **449** define two resonance points.
A block frequency is active if the parameter values of the block frequency and the frequency hysteresis are not equal to 0.00 Hz.
The area faded out as a stationary working point by the hysteresis is passed through as quickly as possible according to the selected ramp for V. If the output frequency is limited as a result of the selected control parameter settings, e.g. if the current limit is reached, the hysteresis is passed through with a delay. The behavior of the reference value can be determined from its direction of movement according to the following diagram.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
447	1st Blocking Frequency	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	0.00 Hz
448	2nd Blocking Frequency	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	0.00 Hz
449	Frequency Hysteresis	0.00 Hz	100.00 Hz	0.00 Hz



13.10 Motor Potentiometer

The motor potentiometer is used for controlling the motor speed using

- digital control signals (Function Motorpoti MP) or
- the keys of the KP 500 control unit (Function Motorpoti KP)

The following functions are assigned to the Up/Down control commands:

Activation				
Motorpoti (MP)		**Motorpoti (KP)**		**Function**
Up	**Down**	**Up**	**Down**	
0	0	–	–	Output signal does not change.
1	0	▲	–	Output value rises at set ramp.
0	1	–	▼	Output value drops at set ramp.
1	1	▲ + ▼		Output value is reset to initial value.

0 = contact open 1 = contact closed

▲ ▼ = arrow keys at KP 500 control unit

The motor potentiometer function as well as its assignment to other reference value sources can be selected in the corresponding reference value channels via parameters *Reference Frequency Source* **475** or *Reference Percentage Source* **476**.
Refer to Chapters "Frequency Reference Channel" and "Reference percentage channel" for the possible reference value source assignments.

The availability of the functions "Motorpoti (MP)" and "Motorpoti (KP)" varies in the different reference value channels:

Reference value channel		
	Reference Frequency Source **475**	*Reference Percentage Source* **476**
Motorpoti (MP)	X	X
Motorpoti (KP)	X	0

X = Function available 0 = Function not available

Depending on the active reference value channel, the function is assigned to a digital signal via parameters *Frequency Motorpoti Up* **62**, *Frequency Motorpot. Down* **63** or *Percent Motorpo. Up* **72**, *Percent Motorpoti Down* **73**.
Refer to Chapter "Digital Inputs" for a list of the available digital signals.

The *Operation Mode* **474** of the motor potentiometer function defines the behavior of the function at various operating points of the frequency inverter.

Operation Mode **474**	**Function**
0 - Not Latching	In the operation mode motor potentiometer **non-storing** (not latching), the drive goes to the set minimum reference value at each start.
1 - latching	In the operation mode **storing** (latching) the motor goes to the reference value selected before the switch-off at the start. The reference value is also stored when the device is switched off.
2 - Taking Over	The operation mode Motorpoti **taking over** is to be used for the data set change-over of the reference value channel. The current reference value is used by changing to the motorpoti function.
3 - Taking Over and Latching	This operation mode combines the behavior in operation mode 1 and 2.

13.10.1 Motorpoti (MP)

The Function "Motorpoti (MP)" can be parameterized via the parameters *Reference Frequency Source* **475** or *Reference Percentage Source* **476**.

Frequency Reference Channel

Via the digital control inputs, the required functions *Frequency Motorpoti Up* **62** and *Frequency Motorpot. Down* **63** are activated.
The reference values are limited via parameters *Minimum Frequency* **418** and *Maximum Frequency* **419**.

Reference percentage channel

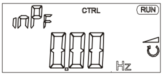
Via the digital control inputs, the required functions *Percentage Motorpoti Up* **72** and *Percentage Motorpot. Down* **73** are activated. The reference values are limited via parameters *Minimum Percentage* **518** and *Maximum Percentage* **519**.

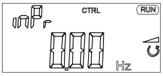
13.10.2 Motorpoti (KP)

The function "Motorpoti (KP)" is only available in the reference frequency channel. The function and its assignment to other reference value sources can be selected via parameter *Reference Frequency Source* **475**.

Via the keys of the KP 500 control unit, the required functions *Frequency Motorpoti Up* **62** and *Frequency Motorpot. Down* **63** are activated.
The reference values are limited via parameters *Minimum Frequency* **418** and *Maximum Frequency* **419**.

The function is used as described in Chapter "Controlling the Motor via the Control Unit".
When the function Motorpoti (KP) is active "**inPF**" will be displayed for clockwise operation and "**inPr**" will be displayed for anti-clockwise operation.





The control unit keys have the following functions:

Key functions	
▲ / ▼	Increase / reduce frequency.
ENT	Reversal of the direction of rotation independent of the control signal on the terminals Clockwise S2IND or Anticlockwise S3IND.
ENT (1 sec)	Save the selected function as default value. The direction of rotation is not exchanged.
ESC	Cancel function and return to the menu structure.
FUN	Switch from internal set point **inP** to JOG frequency; the drive starts. Release the key to switch to the sub-function and stop the drive.
RUN	Start drive; alternative to control signal S2IND or S3IND.
STOP	Stop drive; alternative to control signal S2IND or S3IND.

13.10.3 Controlling the Motor via the Control Unit

The parameter *Reference Frequency Source* **475** enables the assignment of the reference value sources in the frequency reference value channel. Operation modes can be set without the function "Motorpoti (KP)".
If an operation mode is selected without "Motorpoti (KP)", it is still possible to control a connected motor via the keys of the KP 500 control unit.
The function is activated as described in "Control Unit KP500, Controlling the Motor via the Control Unit".
The speed of the modification of the reference value is limited by the parameter *Ramp Keypad-Motorpoti* **473**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
473	Ramp Keypad-Motorpoti	0.00 Hz/s	999.99 Hz/s	2.00 Hz/s

13.11 Repetition frequency input

The use of a frequency signal completes the various possibilities of the reference value specification. The signal at one of the available digital inputs is evaluated according to the selected *Operation Mode* **496**.

Operation Mode **496**		Function
0 -	Off	Repetition frequency is zero.
21 -	S2IND Single Evaluation pos.	One edge of the frequency signal at terminal X210A.4 is evaluated with a positive sign.
22 -	S2IND Double Evaluation pos.	Both edges of the frequency signal at terminal X210A.4 are evaluated with a positive sign.
31 -	S3IND Single Evaluation pos.	One edge of the frequency signal at terminal X210A.5 is evaluated with a positive sign.
32 -	S3IND Double Evaluation pos.	Both edges of the frequency signal at terminal X210A.5 are evaluated with a positive sign.
61 -	S6IND Single Evaluation pos.	One edge of the frequency signal at terminal X210B.1 is evaluated with a positive sign.
62 -	S6IND Double Evaluation pos.	Both edges of the frequency signal at terminal X210B.1 are evaluated with a positive sign.
121 to 162		Operation modes 21 to 62 with evaluation of the frequency signal, but with a negative sign.

Note: If a digital input is configured as a repetition frequency input, this input cannot be used for other functions.
Check the link of the digital inputs to other functions.

The signal frequency at the selected repetition frequency input can be scaled via the parameter *Divider* **497**. The parameter figure is comparable with the division marks of a speed sensor per rotation of the drive. The frequency limit of the parameterized digital input is to be taken into account for the frequency of the input signal.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
497	Divider	1	8192	1024

Note: The reference value specification within the different functions enables the use of the repetition frequency signal as a percentage figure. A signal frequency of 100 Hz at the repetition frequency input corresponds to 100%, 1 Hz corresponds to 1%. The parameter *Divider* **497** is to be used in a way comparable with the speed sensor simulation.

14 Control Inputs and Outputs

The modular structure of the frequency inverters enables a wide spectrum of applications on the basis of the available hardware and software functionality. The control inputs and outputs of terminals X210A and X210B described in the following can be linked to software modules freely via the described parameters.

14.1 Multi-function input MFI1

Multifunction input MFI1 can either be configured as a voltage, current or a digital input. Depending on the selected *Operation Mode* **452** for the multifunction input, a link to various functions of the software is possible. The unused operation modes are assigned the signal value 0 (LOW).

Operation mode **452**	**Function**
1 - Voltage Input	voltage signal (MFI1A), 0 V ... 10 V
2 - Current Input	current signal (MFI1A), 0 mA ... 20 mA
3 - Digital Input	digital signal (MFI1D), 0 V ... 24 V

Note: The sampling rate of multi-function input MFI1D is slower than that of digital signals S1IND, S2IND, etc. For this reason, this input should only be used for signals which are not time-critical.

14.1.1 Analog Input MFI1A

Multifunction input MFI1 is configured by default for an analog reference value source with a voltage signal of 0 V to 10 V.
Alternatively, you can select the operation mode for an analog current signal of 0 mA to 20 mA. The current signal is continuously monitored and the fault message "F1407" displayed if the maximum figure is exceeded.

14.1.1.1 Characteristic

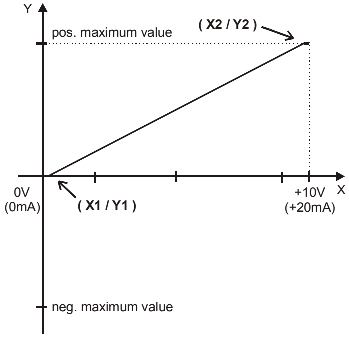
Mapping of the analog input signal onto a reference frequency value or a reference percentage value is possible for various requirements. Parameterization can be done via two points of the linear characteristic of the reference value channel.
Point 1 with coordinates X1 and Y1 and point 2 with coordinates X2 and Y2 can be set in four data sets.

Parameter		**Settings**		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
454	Point X1	0.00 %	100.00 %	2.00 %
455	Point Y1	-100.00 %	100.00 %	0.00 %
456	Point X2	0.00 %	100.00 %	98.00 %
457	Point Y2	-100.00 %	100.00 %	100.00 %

The coordinates of the points relate, as a percentage, to the analog signal with 10 V or 20 mA and parameter *Maximum Frequency* **419** or parameter *Maximum Reference Percentage* **519**. The direction of rotation can be changed via the digital inputs and/or by selection of the points.

Attention! The monitoring of the analog input signal via the parameter *Error/Warning Behavior* **453** demands the examination of the parameter *Point X1* **454**.

The following characteristic is set by default and can be adapted to the application via the parameters mentioned.



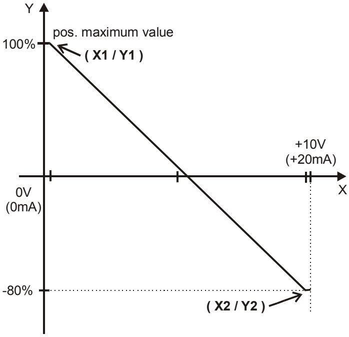
Point 1:

$$X1 = 2.00\% \cdot 10\ \mathrm{V} = 0.20\ \mathrm{V}$$
$$Y1 = 0.00\% \cdot 50.00\ \mathrm{Hz} = 0.00\ \mathrm{Hz}$$

Point 2:

$$X2 = 98.00\% \cdot 10\ \mathrm{V} = 9.80\ \mathrm{V}$$
$$Y2 = 100.00\% \cdot 50.00\ \mathrm{Hz} = 50.00\ \mathrm{Hz}$$

The freely configurable characteristic enables setting a tolerance at the ends as well as a reversal of the direction of rotation.
The following example shows the inverse reference value specification with additional reversal of the direction of rotation. This is often used in pressure control systems.



Point 1:

$$X1 = 2.00\% \cdot 10\ \mathrm{V} = 0.20\ \mathrm{V}$$
$$Y1 = 100.00\% \cdot 50.00\ \mathrm{Hz} = 50.00\ \mathrm{Hz}$$

Point 2:

$$X2 = 98.00\% \cdot 10\ \mathrm{V} = 9.80\ \mathrm{V}$$
$$Y2 = -80.00\% \cdot 50.00\ \mathrm{Hz} = -40.00\ \mathrm{Hz}$$

The reversal of the direction of rotation is effected in this example at an analog input signal of 5.5V.

The definition of the analog input characteristic can be calculated via the two-point form of the line equation. The speed Y of the drive is controlled according to the analog control signal X.

$$Y = \frac{Y2 - Y1}{X2 - X1} \cdot (X - X1) + Y1$$

14.1.1.2 Scaling

The analog input signal is mapped to the freely configurable characteristic. The maximum admissible setting range of the drive can be set via the frequency limits or percentage limits according to the configuration selected. In the case of the parameterization of a bipolar characteristic, the set minimum and maximum limits for both directions of rotation are effective. The percentage values of the characteristic points are relative to the limits selected.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
418	Minimum Frequency	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	3.50 Hz [1)] 0.00 Hz [2)]
419	Maximum Frequency	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	50.00 Hz

The factory settings depend on the setup of parameter *Configuration* **30**:

[1)] 3.50 Hz in configurations 1xx, 4xx

[2)] 0.00 Hz in configurations 2xx, 5xx

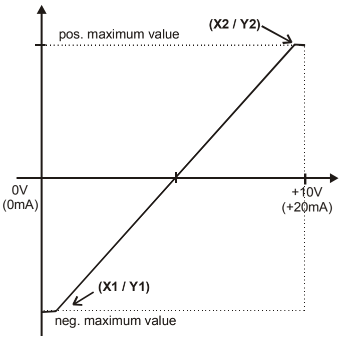
The control system uses the maximum value of the output frequency, which is calculated from the *Maximum Frequency* **419** and the compensated slip of the drive. The frequency limits define the speed range of the drive, and the percentage values supplement the scaling of the analog input characteristic in accordance with the functions configured.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
518	Minimum Reference Percentage	0.00 %	300.00 %	0.00 %
519	Maximum Reference Percentage	0.00 %	300.00 %	100.00 %

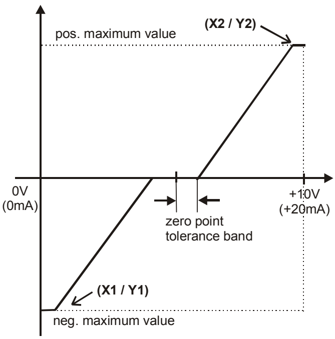
14.1.1.3 Tolerance Band and Hysteresis

The analog input characteristic with change of sign of the reference value can be adapted by the parameter *Tolerance Band* **450** of the application. The adjustable tolerance band extends the zero passage of the speed relative to the analog control signal. The parameter value (percent) is relative to the maximum current or voltage signal.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
450	Tolerance Band	0.00 %	25.00 %	2.00 %

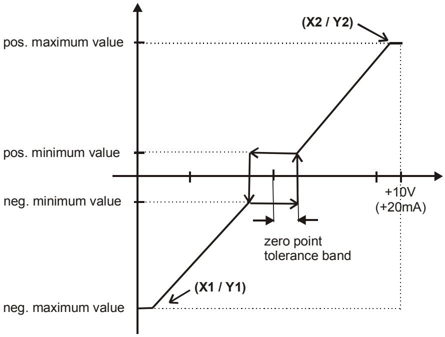


Without tolerance band



With tolerance band

The default *Minimum Frequency* **418** or *Minimum Percentage* **518** extends the parameterized tolerance band to the hysteresis.



Tolerance band with set maximum frequency

For example, the output variable coming from positive input signals is kept on the positive minimum value until the input signal becomes lower than the value for the tolerance band in the negative direction. Then, the output variable follows the set characteristic.

14.1.1.4 Filter Time Constant

The time constant of the filter for the analog reference value can be set via the parameter *Filter Time Constant* **451**.
The time constant indicates the time during which the input signal is averaged by means of a low pass filter, e.g. in order to eliminate fault effects.
The setting range is between 0 ms and 5000 ms in 15 steps.

Filter Time Constant **451**	**Function**
0 - Time Constant 0 ms	Filter deactivated – analog reference value is forwarded unfiltered.
2 - Time Constant 2 ms	Filter activated – averaging of the input signal via the set value of the filter time constants.
4 - Time Constant 4 ms	
8 - Time Constant 8 ms	
16 - Time Constant 16 ms	
32 - Time Constant 32 ms	
64 - Time Constant 64 ms	
128 - Time Constant 128 ms	
256 - Time Constant 256 ms	
512 - Time Constant 512 ms	
1000 - Time Constant 1000 ms	
2000 - Time Constant 2000 ms	
3000 - Time Constant 3000 ms	
4000 - Time Constant 4000 ms	
5000 - Time Constant 5000 ms	

14.1.1.5 Error and warning behavior

For monitoring the analog input signal, an operation mode can be selected via parameter *Error/Warning Behavior* **453**.

Error/Warning Behavior **453**	Function
0 - Off	The input signal is not monitored.
1 - Warning < 1V/2mA	If the input signal is lower than 1 V or 2 mA, a warning message is issued.
2 - Shut Down < 1V/2mA	If the input signal is lower than 1 V or 2 mA, a warning message is issued; the drive is decelerated according to stopping behavior 2.
3 - Error Switch-Off < 1V/2mA	If the input signal is lower than 1 V or 2 mA, a warning and fault message is issued and the drive coasts to a standstill (stopping behavior 0).

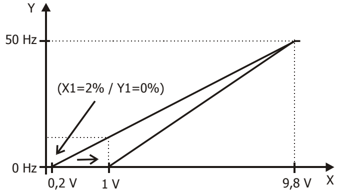
Monitoring of the analog input signal is active regardless of the release of the frequency inverter according to the operation mode selected.

Operation mode **2** defines the shut-down and stopping of the drive, regardless of the setting of parameter *Operation Mode* **630** for the stopping behavior. The drive is stopped according to stopping behavior 2. If the set holding time has expired, an error message is issued. The drive can be started again by switching the start signal on and off.

Operation mode **3** defines the free coasting of the drive (like described for stopping behavior 0), regardless of the setting of parameter *Operation Mode* **630** for the stopping behavior.

Attention! The monitoring of the analog input signal via the parameter *Error/Warning Behavior* **453** demands the examination of the parameter *Point X1* **454**.

Example: *Error/Warning Behavior* **453** = "2 - Shut Down < 1V/2mA" or "3 - Error Switch-Off < 1V/2mA. In the factory setting of parameter *Point X1* **454** shut down or error switch-off is activated at an output frequency unequal to 0 Hz. If shut down or error switch-off should be activated at an output frequency equal to 0 Hz the parameter *Point X1* **454** must be adjusted (e.g. X1=10% /1 V).



14.2 Multi-function output MFO1

Multifunction output MFO1 can either be configured as a digital, analog or a repetition frequency output. Depending on the selected *Operation mode* **550** for the multifunction output, a link to various functions of the software is possible. The operation modes not used are deactivated internally.

Operation mode **550**	Function
0 - Off	Output has the logic signal LOW.
1 - Digital	Digital output, 0 ... 24 V.
2 - Analog	Analog output, 0 ... 24 V.
3 - Repetition frequency	Repetition frequency output, 0 ... 24 V, f_{max} = 150 kHz.

14.2.1 Analog Output MFO1A

By default, the multifunction output MFO1 is configured for the output of a pulse width modulated output signal with a maximum voltage of DC 24 V.
The selected configuration determines which actual values can be selected for parameter *Analog Operation* **553** of multifunction output 1.

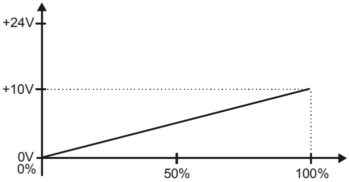
Analog operation **553**		**Function**
0 -	Off	Analog operation MFO1 is switched off.
1 -	Abs. Fs	Absolute value of stator frequency 1, 0.00 Hz ... *Maximum Frequency* **419**.
2 -	Abs. Fs betw. fmin/fmax	Absolute value of stator frequency, *Minimum Frequency* **418** ... *Maximum Frequency* **419**.
3 -	Abs. Speed Sensor 1	Absolute value of speed sensor signal 1, 0.00 Hz ... *Maximum Frequency* **419**.
7 -	Abs. Actual Frequency	Absolute value of actual frequency, 0.00 Hz ... *Maximum Frequency* **419**.
20 -	Abs. Iactive	Absolute value of current active current I_{ACTIVE}, 0.0 A ... FU rated current.
21 -	Abs. Isd	Abs. value of flux-forming current component, 0.0 A ... FU rated current.
22 -	Abs. Isq	Abs. value of torque-forming current component, 0.0 A ... FU rated current.
30 -	Abs. Pactive	Absolute value of current active power P_{ACTIVE}, 0.0 kW ... *Rated Power* **376**.
31 -	Abs. M	Absolute value of calculated torque M, 0.0 Nm ... rated torque.
32 -	Abs. Inside Temperature	Abs. value of measured inside temperature, 0 °C ... 100 °C.
33 -	Abs. Heat Sink Temperature	Abs. value of measured heat sink temperature, 0 °C ... 100 °C.
40 -	Abs. Analog Input MFI1A	Absolute signal value at analog input 1, 0.0 V ... 10.0 V.
50 -	Abs. I	Absolute current value of the measured output currents, 0.0 A ... FU rated current.
51 -	DC link voltage	DC link voltage U_d, 0.0 V ... 1000.0 V.
52 -	V	Output voltage V, 0.0 V ... 1000.0 V.
53 -	Volume Flow	Absolute value of calculated volumetric flow 0.0 m^3/h ... *Nominal Volumetric Flow* **397**.
54 -	Pressure	Absolute value of calculated pressure 0.0 kPa ... *Nominal Pressure* **398**.
101 to 133		Operation modes in analog operation with signs.

14.2.1.1 Output Characteristic

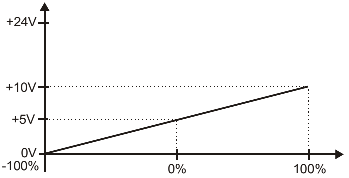
The voltage range of the output signal at multifunction output 1 can be adjusted. The value range of the actual value selected via parameter *Analog Operation* **553** is assigned to the value range of the output signal which is adjusted via the parameters *Voltage 100%* **551** and *Voltage 0%* **552**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
551	Voltage 100%	0.0 V	22.0 V	10.0 V
552	Voltage 0%	0.0 V	22.0 V	0.0 V

Actual abs. value *Analog Operation* **553**:



Analog Operation **553** with signs:



With the parameters *Voltage 100%* **551** and *Voltage 0%* **552**, the voltage range at 100% and 0% of the output parameter is set. If the output value exceeds the reference value, the output voltage also exceeds the value of the parameter *Voltage 100%* **551** up to the maximum value of 24V.

14.2.2 Frequency Output MFO1F

The multifunctional output MFO1 can be used as a frequency output if the corresponding *Operation Mode* **550** is selected. The 24V output signal is assigned to the abs. value of the speed or frequency via the parameter *Repetition Freq. Operation* **555**. The selection of the operation modes depends on the expansion modules installed as an option.

Repetition Freq. Operation **555**		Function
0 -	Off	Repetition frequency operation MFO1 switched off.
1 -	Actual Frequency	Abs. value of the *Actual Frequency* **241**.
2 -	Stator Frequency	Abs. value of the *Stator Frequency* **210**.
3 -	Frequency Speed Sensor 1	Abs. value of the *Encoder 1 Frequency* **217**.
5 -	Repetition Frequency Input	Abs. value of the *Repetition Frequency Input* **252**.

14.2.2.1 Scaling

The repetition frequency mode for the multifunction output corresponds to the emulation of an incremental sensor. The parameter *Division Marks* **556** must be parameterized according to the frequency to be output.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
556	Division marks	30	8192	1024

The frequency limit of f_{max}=150 kHz must not be exceeded in the calculation of the parameter *Division marks* **556**, i.e. the requirement

$S_{max} * $ abs. frequency value $*$ 150 kHz must be met.

$$S_{max} = \frac{150000\,\text{Hz}}{\text{Frequency value}}$$

14.3 Digital Outputs

The *OP. Mode Digital Output 1* **530** and the relay output with the parameter *Op. Mode Digital Output 3* **532** link the digital outputs to various functions. The selection of the functions depends on the parameterized configuration. The use of the multi-functional output MFO1 as a digital output demands selection of an *Operation Mode* **550** and linking via parameter *Digital Operation* **554**.

Operation mode 530,532,554	Function
0 - Off	Digital output is switched off.
1 - Ready or Standby Signal	Frequency inverter is initialized and on stand-by or in operation.
2 - Run Signal	Controller release signal and a start command are present, output frequency available.
3 - Error Signal	Message is displayed via the parameter *Current Error* **259** or *Warnings* **269**.
4 - Setting Frequency	The *Stator Frequency* **210** is higher than the parameterized *Setting Frequency* **510**.
5 - Reference Frequency reached	The *Actual Frequency* **241** of the drive has reached the *Internal Reference Frequency* **228**.
6 - Reference Percentage Reached	The *Actual Percentage Value* **230** has reached the *Reference Percentage Value* **229**.
7 - Ixt warning	The *Warning Limit Short-Term Ixt* **405** or *Warning Limit Long-Term Ixt* **406** has been reached.
8 - Warning Heat sink temperature	Max. heat sink temperature T_K of 80 °C minus the *Warning Limit Heat Sink Temp.* **407** reached.
9 - Warning Inside temperature	Max. inside temperature T_i of 65 °C minus the *Warning Limit Inside Temperature* **408** reached.
10 - Warning Motor Temperature	Warning behavior according to parameterized *Motor Temp. Operation Mode* **570** at max. motor temperature T_{PTC}.
11 - Warning General	The message is displayed via parameter *Warnings* **269**.
12 - Warning over temperature	The selected limit values *Warning Limit* Heat Sink Temp. **407**, *Warning Limit Inside Temp* **408** or the maximum motor temperature have been exceeded.
13 - Mains Failure	Failure of the mains voltage and power regulation active according to *Operation Mode* **670** for the voltage controller.
14 - Warning Motor Protect. Switch	Parameterized *Operation Mode* **571** for the motor protection switch has triggered.
15 - Warning Current Limitation	A controller or the *Operation Mode* **573** of the intelligent current limits limit the output current.
16 - Controller Current Limit. Long Term Ixt	The overload reserve for 60 s has been used up and the output current is being limited.
17 - Controller Current Limit. Short Term Ixt	The overload reserve for 1 s has been used up and the output current is being limited.
18 - Controller Current Limit. TK	Max. heat sink temperature TK reached, intelligent current limits of *Operation Mode* **573** active.
19 - Controller Current Limit. Motor Temp.	Max. motor temperature reached, intelligent current limits of *Operation Mode* **573** active.
20 - Comparator 1	The comparison according to the selected *OP. mode Comparator 1* **540** is true.

Table "Operation Modes for Digital Outputs" continued on next page.

Operation mode	Function
21 - Comparator 2	The comparison according to the selected *OP. mode Comparator 2* **543** is true.
22 - Warning V-belt	Warning of *Operation Mode* **581** of V-belt monitoring.
23 - Timer 1	The selected *Operation Mode Timer 1* **790** generates an output signal of the function.
24 - Timer 2	The selected *Operation Mode Timer 2* **793** generates an output signal of the function.
25 - Warning Mask	Message of the configurable parameter *Create Warning Mask* **536**.
30 - Flux Formation Ended	Magnetic field has been impressed.
41 - Open brake	Activation of a brake unit depending on the *Operation Mode* **620** for the starting behavior, *Operation Mode* **630** for the stopping behavior or the configured brake control system.
43 - External Fan	The *Switch-On Temperature* **39** has been reached.
60 - Arrived at desired Position	*Reference orientation* **469** of axle positioning reached.
70 - Logic Function 1	Signal from output of logic module 1, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Logic 1* **198**.
71 - Logic Function 2	Signal from output of logic module 2, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Logic 2* **201**.
72 - Logic Function 3	Signal from output of logic module 3, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Logic 3* **205**.
73 - Logic Function 4	Signal from output of logic module 4, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Logic 4* **503**.
100 to 173	Operation modes inverted (LOW active).

14.3.1 Setting Frequency

If operation mode **4** is selected for a digital output, the corresponding output becomes active if the *Stator Frequency* **210** has exceeded the value set under the parameter *Setting Frequency* **510**.

The relevant output is switched over again as soon as the *Stator Frequency* **210** falls below the value selected for the setting frequency.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
510	Setting Frequency	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	3.00 Hz

14.3.2 Reference value reached

In operation mode **5** or **6** for a digital output, a message is generated via the corresponding output when the actual frequency or actual percentage value has reached the reference value.
The maximum deviation can be defined as a percentage of the adjustable range (Max - Min) via the parameter *Max. Control Deviation* **549**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
549	Max. Control Deviation	0.01 %	20.00 %	5.00 %

14.3.3 Flux Formation Ended

If operation mode **30** is selected for a digital output the corresponding output becomes active when the flux formation is ended. The time for the flux formation results from the operating state of the machine and the set parameters for magnetizing the machine. The magnetizing can be defined via the starting behavior and is influenced by the amount of the set starting current.

14.3.4 Open brake

The Open brake function in operation mode **41** enables the activation of a corresponding unit via the digital control output. The function uses both the control commands via the contact inputs and the set starting and stopping behavior for controlling the digital output.
According to the configured starting behavior, the output is switched on when the magnetizing of the motor is finished. The brake is released and the drive is accelerated.
The stopping behavior of the drive depends on the configuration of the parameters *Operation Mode* **630**. This is described in chapter "Stopping Behavior".
If stopping behavior 2 or 5 with stop function is selected, the drive is controlled to zero speed and the digital output is not switched off. In the other operation modes of the stop behavior, the control of the brake is possible. At the start of a free coasting of the drive, the digital output is switched off.
This is similar to the behavior in the case of the stopping behavior with shutdown. The drive is decelerated and supplied with current for the set holding time. Within the set holding time, the control output is switched off and thus the brake activated.

Control of Brake	
Stopping Behavior 0	Operation mode "41-Open brake" switches off the digital output assigned to the function immediately. The mechanical brake is activated.
Stopping Behavior 1, 3, 4, 6, 7	Operation mode "41-Open brake" switches off the digital output assigned to the function when *Switch-Off Threshold* **637** is reached. The mechanical brake is activated.
Stopping Behavior 2, 5	Operation mode "41-Open brake" leaves the digital output assigned to the function switched on. The mechanical brake remains open.

14.3.5 Current Limitation

Operation modes 15 to 19 link the digital outputs and the relay output to the functions of the intelligent current limits. The reduction of power by the set figure in percent of the rated current depends on the selected operation mode. Accordingly, the event for intervention of the current limitation can be output via the operation modes of the digital outputs. If the function of the intelligent current limits is deactivated within the sensor-less control, operation modes **16** to **19** are switched off in the same way.

14.3.6 External Fan

Operation mode **43** enables the control of an external fan. Via the digital output, the fan is switched on if the controller is released and Start clockwise or Start anticlockwise are switched on, or if the *Switch-On Temperature* **39** for the internal fan was reached.

14.3.7 Warning Mask

The logic signals of various monitoring and control functions can be set via the operation mode for parameter *Create Warning Mask* **536**. According to the application, any number of warnings and controller status messages can be combined. This enables internal or external control via a common output signal.

Create Warning Mask **536**	Function
0 - No Change	Configured warning mask is not modified.
1 - Activate everything	The warnings and controller status messages stated are linked in the warning mask.
2 - Activate all Warnings	The warnings reports stated are linked in the warning mask.
3 - Activate all Controller States	The controller status reports stated are linked in the warning mask.
10 - Warning Ixt	The frequency inverter is overloaded.
11 - Warning Short-Term Ixt	Overload reserve for 1 s minus the *Warning Limit Short-Term Ixt* **405** has been reached.
12 - Warning Long-Term Ixt	Overload reserve for 60 s minus the *Warning Limit Long-Term Ixt* **406** has been reached.
13 - Warning Heat Sink Temperature	Max. heat sink temperature T_K of 80 °C minus the *Warning Limit Heat Sink Temperature* **407** has been reached.
14 - Warning Inside Temperature	Max. inside temperature T_i of 65 °C minus the *Warning Limit Inside Temperature* **408** reached.
15 - Warning Limit	The controller stated in *Controller Status* **355** limits the reference value.
16 - Warning Init	Frequency inverter is initialized.
17 - Warning Motor Temperature	Warning behavior according to parameterized *Motor Temp. Operation Mode* **570** at max. motor temperature T_{PTC}.
18 - Warning Phase Failure	*Phase Supervision* **576** reports a phase failure.
19 - Warning Motor Protection Switch	*Operation Mode* **571** for the motor protective switch has triggered.
20 - Warning Fmax	The *Maximum Frequency* **419** has been exceeded. The frequency limitation is active.
21 - Warning Analog Input MFI1A	The input signal is lower than 1V/2mA according to the operation mode *Error/Warning Behavior* **453.**
22 - Warning Analog Input EM-S1INA	The input signal is lower than 1V/2mA according to the operation mode *Error/Warning Behavior* **453.**
23 - Warning System bus	A Slave at the system bus signals a fault; Warning is only relevant with option EM-SYS.
24 - Warning Udc	The DC link voltage has reached the type-dependent minimum value.
25 - Warning V-belt	The *Operation Mode* **581** for V-belt monitoring signals no-load operation of the application.
30 - Controller Udc Dynamic Operation	Controller is active according to the *Operation Mode* **670** for the voltage controller.
31 - Controller Shutdown	The output frequency in the case of a mains failure is below the *Shutdown Threshold* **675**.
32 - Controller Mains Failure	Failure of the mains voltage and power regulation active according to *Operation Mode* **670** for the voltage controller.

Operation mode	Function
33 - Controller Udc Limitation	The DC link voltage has exceeded the *Reference DC-Link Limitation* **680**.
34 - Controller Voltage Pre-Control	The *Dyn. Voltage Pre-Control* **605** accelerates the control characteristics.
35 - Controller I abs	The output current is limited.
36 - Controller Torque Limitation	The output power or the torque is limited on the speed controller.
37 - Controller Torque Control	Switch-over of field-orientated control between speed and torque-controlled.
38 - Ramp Stop	The *Operation Mode* **620** selected in starting behavior limits the output current.
39 - Contr. Intel. Curr. Lim. LT-Ixt	Overload limit of the long-term Ixt (60s) reached, intelligent current limits active.
40 - Contr. Intel. Curr. Lim. ST-Ixt	Overload limit of the short-term Ixt (1s) reached, intelligent current limits active.
41 - Contr. Intel. Curr. Lim. Tc	Max. heat sink temperature T_K reached, *Operation Mode* **573** for the intelligent current limits active.
42 - Contr. Intel. Curr. Lim. Motor Temp.	Max. motor temperature T_{PTC} reached, *Operation Mode* **573** for the intelligent current limits active.
43 - Controller Torque Limitation	The reference frequency has reached the *Maximum Frequency* **419**. The frequency limitation is active.
101 to 143	Removal or deactivation of the operation mode within the warning mask.

The selected warning mask can be read out via the parameter *Actual Warning Mask* **537**. The above operation modes, which can be set in the configurable *Create Warning Mask* **536** are encoded in the *Actual Warning Mask* **537**. The code results from hexadecimal addition of the individual operation modes and the matching abbreviation.

Warning code				Operation mode 536
A	FFFF	FFFF	-	1 - Activate everything
A	0000	FFFF	-	2 - Activate all Warnings
A	FFFF	0000	-	3 - Activate all Controller States
A	0000	0001	Ixt	10 - Warning Ixt
A	0000	0002	IxtSt	11 - Warning Short-Term Ixt
A	0000	0004	IxtLt	12 - Warning Long-Term Ixt
A	0000	0008	Tc	13 - Warning Heat Sink Temperature
A	0000	0010	Ti	14 - Warning Inside Temperature
A	0000	0020	Lim	15 - Warning Limit
A	0000	0040	INIT	16 - Warning Init
A	0000	0080	MTemp	17 - Warning Motor Temperature
A	0000	0100	Mains	18 - Warning Phase Failure
A	0000	0200	PMS	19 - Warning Motor Protection Switch
A	0000	0400	Flim	20 - Warning Fmax
A	0000	0800	A1	21 - Warning Analog Input MFI1A
A	0000	1000	A2	22 - Warning Analog Input MFI2A
A	0000	2000	Sysbus	23 - Warning System bus
A	0000	4000	UDC	24 - Warning Udc
A	0000	8000	BELT	25 - Warning V-belt

Table "Operation Modes of Warning Mask" continued on next page.

Warning code	Operation mode 536
A 0001 0000 UDdyn	30 - Controller Udc Dynamic Operation
A 0002 0000 UDstop	31 - Controller Shutdown
A 0004 0000 UDctr	32 - Controller Mains Failure
A 0008 0000 UDlim	33 - Controller Udc Limitation
A 0010 0000 Boost	34 - Controller Voltage Pre-Control
A 0020 0000 Ilim	35 - Controller I abs
A 0040 0000 Tlim	36 - Controller Torque Limitation
A 0080 0000 Tctr	37 - Controller Torque Control
A 0100 0000 Rstp	38 - Ramp Stop
A 0200 0000 IxtLtlim	39 - Contr. Intel. Curr. Lim. LT-Ixt
A 0400 0000 IxtStlim	40 - Contr. Intel. Curr. Lim. ST-Ixt
A 0800 0000 Tclim	41 - Contr. Intel. Curr. Lim. Tc
A 1000 0000 MtempLim	42 - Contr. Intel. Curr. Lim. Motor Temp.
A 2000 0000 Flim	43 - Controller Freq. Limitation

14.4 Digital Inputs

The assignment of the control signals to the available software functions can be adapted to the application in question. Depending on the *Configuration* **30** selected, the default assignment or the selection of the operation mode differ. In addition to the available digital control inputs, further internal logic signals are available as sources.
The individual software functions are assigned to the various signal sources via parameterizable inputs. This enables a flexible use of the digital control signals.

Digital Inputs	Function
6 - On	Signal input is switched on.
7 - Off	Signal input is switched off.
13 - Technology Controller Start	Start command technology controller (configuration 111 or 411).
61 - Error Signal Output	Monitoring function signals an operational fault.
70 - S1IND	Signal at digital input S1IND (X210A.3) (controller release linked permanently).
71 - S2IND	Signal at digital input S2IND (X210A.4) or remote control via communication interface.
72 - S3IND	Signal at digital input S3IND (X210A.5) or remote control via communication interface.
73 - S4IND	Signal at digital input S4IND (X210A.6) or remote control via communication interface.
74 - S5IND	Signal at digital input S5IND (X210A.7) or remote control via communication interface.
75 - S6IND	Signal at digital input S6IND (X210B.1) or remote control via communication interface.
76 - MFI1D	Signal at multifunction input MFI1 (X210B.6) in *Operation Mode* **452** = 3 - digital input or remote control via communication interface.
157 - Warning Mask	The defined warnings mask of parameter *Create Warning Mask* **536** signals a critical operating point.

Table "Operation Modes for Digital Control Signals" continued on next page.

Digital Inputs	Function
158 - Timer 1	Output signal of the time function according to the input connection *Timer 1* **83**.
159 - Timer 2	Output signal of the time function according to the input connection *Timer 2* **84**.
163 - Reference Frequency reached	Signal when the *Actual Frequency* **241** has reached the reference frequency.
164 - Setting Frequency	Signal when the *Setting Frequency* **510** is smaller than or equal to the *Actual Frequency* **241**.
165 - Warning Ixt	The monitoring functions report an overload of the frequency inverter.
166 - Warning Heat sink temperature	Max. heat sink temperature T_K of 80 °C less the *Warning Limit Heat Sink Temp* **407** reached.
167 - Warning Inside temperature	Max. inside temperature T_i of 65 °C less the *Warning Limit Inside Temp.* **408** reached.
168 - Warning Motor Temperature	Warning behavior according to parameterized *Motor Temp. Operation mode* **570** at max. motor temperature T_{PTC}.
169 - General Warning	Signal when *Warnings* **269** are displayed with a critical operating point.
170 - Warning Over temperature	The selected limit values *Warning Limit Heat Sink Temp.* **407**, *Warning Limit Inside Temp* **408** or the maximum motor temperature have been exceeded.
171 - Output Comparator 1	The comparison according to the selected *OP. mode Comparator 1* **540** is true.
172 - Inverted Output Comparator 1	Operation mode 171 with inverted logic (LOW active).
173 - Output Comparator 2	The comparison according to the selected *OP. mode Comparator 2* **543** is true.
174 - Inverted Output Comparator 2	Operation mode 173 with inverted logic (LOW active).
175 - Digital Signal 1	Signal, according to parameterized *Operation Digital Output 1* **530**.
176 - Digital Signal 2	Signal according to parameterized *Digital Operation* **554** at multi-function output MFO1.
177 - Digital Signal 3	Signal, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Digital Output 3* **532**.
178 - Reference Percentage Reached	High when the *Actual Percentage Value* **230** has reached the *Reference Percentage Value* **229**.
179 - Mains Failure	Failure of the mains voltage and power regulation active according to *Operation Mode* **670** for the voltage controller.
180 - Warning Motor Protection Switch	Parameterized *Operation Mode* **571** of the motor protection switch has triggered.
220 - Logic module 1	Signal from output of logic module 1, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Logic 1* **198**.
221 - Logic module 1 inverted	Inverted signal from output of logic module 1.
222 - Logic module 2	Signal from output of logic module 2, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Logic 2* **201**.
223 - Logic module 2 inverted	Inverted signal from output of logic module 2.

Table "Operation Modes for Digital Control Signals" continued on next page.

Digital Inputs	Function
224 - Logic module 3	Signal from output of logic module 3, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Logic 3* **205**.
225 - Logic module 3 inverted	Inverted signal from output of logic module 3.
226 - Logic module 4	Signal from output of logic module 4, according to parameterized *Operation Mode Logic 4* **503**.
227 - Logic module 4 inverted	Inverted signal from output of logic module 4.
270 to 276	Operation modes 70 to 76 of the digital inputs inverted (LOW active).
282 - Arrived at desired Position	*Reference orientation* **469** of axle positioning reached.
320 - EM-S1IND [2)]	Signal at digital input 1 of an EM extension module or remote control via communication interface
321 - EM-S2IND [2)]	Signal at digital input 2 of an EM extension module or remote control via communication interface
322 - EM-S3IND [2)]	Signal at digital input 3 of an EM extension module or remote control via communication interface
520 - EM-S1IND inverted	Operation mode 320 inverted.
521 - EM-S2IND inverted	Operation mode 321 inverted.
522 - EM-S3IND inverted	Operation mode 322 inverted.
525 - S1IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input S1IND (X210A.3).
526 - S2IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input S2IND (X210A.4).
527 - S3IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input S3IND (X210A.5).
528 - S4IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input S4IND (X210A.6).
529 - S5IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input S5IND (X210A.7).
530 - S6IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input S6IND (X210B.1).
531 - MFI1D (Hardware) [1)]	Multifunction input MFI1 (X210B.6) in *Operation Mode* **452** = 3 - digital input.
532 - EM-S1IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input 1 of an EM extension module.
533 - EM-S2IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input 2 of an EM extension module.
534 - EM-S3IND (Hardware) [1)]	Digital input 3 of an EM extension module.
537 to 545	Operation modes 525 to 533 of the digital inputs inverted (LOW active).
700 - RxPDO1 Boolean1 [3)]	Signal if an optional expansion module EM with system bus is used.
701 - RxPDO1 Boolean2 [3)]	Signal if an optional expansion module EM with system bus is used.
702 - RxPDO1 Boolean3 [3)]	Signal if an optional expansion module EM with system bus is used.
703 - RxPDO1 Boolean4 [3)]	Signal if an optional expansion module EM with system bus is used.
710 to 713 [3)]	Operation modes 700 to 703 for RxPDO2 with an expansion module EM.
720 to 723 [3)]	Operation modes 700 to 703 for RxPDO3 with an expansion module EM.
730 - Sysbus Emergency [3)]	Signal if an optional expansion module EM with system bus is used.

[1)] The digital signal is independent of the setting of parameter *Local/Remote* **412**.
[2)] Refer to operating instructions of extension modules EM-IO
[3)] Refer to operating instructions "System bus EM-SYS extension module‟

14.4.1 Start command

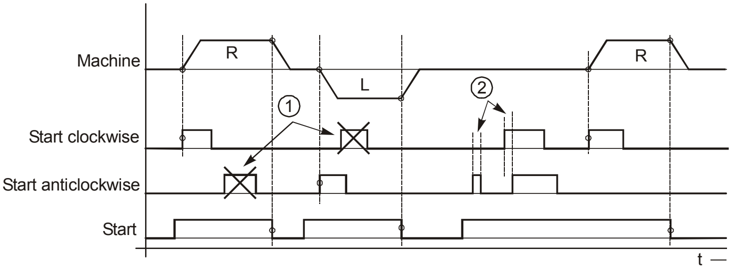
The parameters *Start Clockwise* **68** and *Start Anticlockwise* **69** can be linked to the available digital control inputs or the internal logic signals. The drive is only accelerated according to the control method after a start command.

The logic functions are used for the specification of the direction of rotation, but also for using the parameterized *Operation Mode* **620** for the starting behavior and the *Operation Mode* **630** for the stopping behavior.

14.4.2 3-Wire-Control

In the case of the 3-wire control, the drive is controlled by means of digital pulses. The drive is prepared for the start via the logic state of the signal *Start 3-Wire Control* **87** and started by a Start Clockwise (Parameter *Start Clockwise* **68**) or a Start Anti-Clockwise (Parameter *Start Anti-Clockwise* **69**) pulse. The drive is stopped by switching the signal *Start 3-Wire Control* **87** off.

The control signals for Start Clockwise and Start Anticlockwise are pulses. The functions Start Clockwise and Start Anticlockwise are latching signals if the signal *Start 3-Wire Control* **87** is switched on. The lock is released if the stop signal is switched off.



(R)	Clockwise	**(1)**	Signals are ignored
(L)	Anti-clockwise	**(2)**	Time t < 32 msec

The drive is started according to the configured starting behavior when the signal *Start 3-Wire-Control* **87** is switched on and a positive signal edge for Start Clockwise or Start Anti-Clockwise is detected.

Once the drive has been started, new edges **(1)** on the start signals are ignored.
If the start signal is shorter than 32 msec **(2)** or if both start signals were switched on within 32 msec **(2)**, the drive will be stopped according to the configured stopping behavior.

3-wire control is activated via parameter *Local/Remote* **412**:

Local/Remote **412**	Function
5 - Ctrl. 3-Wire, direction Cont.	3-wire; control of direction of rotation and signal *3-Wire Control* **87** via contacts.
46 - Ctrl. 3-Wire + KP, Dir. Cont. + KP	3-wire and control unit; control of direction of rotation and signal *3-Wire Control* **87** via contacts or control unit.

For further operation modes of parameter *Local/Remote* **412**, refer to Chapter "Bus controller".

14.4.3 Error Acknowledgment

The frequency inverters feature various monitoring functions which can be adapted via the error and warning behavior. Switching the frequency inverter off at the various operating points should be avoided by an application-related parameterization. If there is a fault switch-off, this message can be acknowledged via the parameter *Program(ming)* **34** or the logic signal connected with the parameter *Error Acknowledgment* **103**.

14.4.4 Timer

The time functions can be selected via the parameters *Operation Mode Timer 1* **790** and *Operation Mode Timer 2* **793**. The sources of the logic signals are selected with the parameters *Timer 1* **83** and *Timer 2* **84** and processed according to the configured timer functions.

14.4.5 Thermo-contact

The monitoring of the motor temperature is a part of the error and warning behavior which can be configured as required. The parameter *Thermo contact* **204** links the digital input signal to the defined *Motor Temp. Operation Mode* **570** which is described in chapter "Motor Temperature". The temperature monitoring via a digital input checks the input signal for the threshold value. Accordingly, a thermo contact or an additional circuit must be used if a temperature-dependent resistor is used.

14.4.6 n-/M-Control Change-Over

The field-orientated control procedures in configurations 230 and 430 contain the functions for speed or torque-dependent control of the drive. The change-over can be done during running operation of the drive, as an additional functionality monitors the transition between the two control procedures. The speed controller or the torque controller is active, depending on the *n-/M Control Change-Over* **164**.

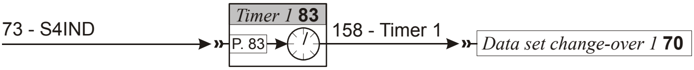
14.4.7 Data Set Change-Over

Parameter values can be stored in four different data sets. This enables the use of various parameter values depending on the current operation point of the frequency inverter.
The change-over between the four data sets is done via the logic signals assigned to the parameters *Data Set Change-Over 1* **70** and *Data Set Change-Over 2* **71**.
The actual value parameter *Active Data Set* **249** shows the selected data set.

Activation		
Data Set Change-Over 1 **70**	*Data Set Change-Over 2* **71**	**Function/active data set**
0	0	Data set 1 (DS1)
1	0	Data set 2 (DS2)
1	1	Data set 3 (DS3)
0	1	Data set 4 (DS4)

0 = contact open 1 = contact closed

If *Configuration* **30** = 110, 111, 410, 411 or 430 is selected, in the factory setting a timer function is interconnected between the digital input S4IND and the data set change-over 1.



The data set change-over 1 is linked with timer 1.
Data set change-over 1 **70** = 158 – Timer 1

Timer 1 is linked with the digital input S4IND (terminal X210A.6)
Timer 1 = 73 – S4IND

In the factory setting the data set change-over 1 is not affected by the Timer 1:
Signal delay *Time 1 Timer 1* **791** = 0.00 s/m/h
Signal duration *Time 2 Timer 1* **792** = 0.00 s/m/h

14.4.8 Fixed Value Change-Over

Depending on the selected configuration, the reference values are specified via the assignment of the *Reference frequency source* **475** or *Reference percentage source* **476**. Accordingly, there can be a change between the fixed values by way of linking the logic signals to the parameters *Fixed frequency change-over 1* **66**, *Fixed frequency change-over 2* **67** or the parameters *Fixed percent change-over 1* **75**, *Fixed percent change-over 2* **76**.

By combining the logic states of the fixed frequency change-over modes 1 and 2, fixed frequencies 1 through 4 can be selected:

Fixed Frequency Control

Fixed Frequency Change-Over 1 **66**	*Fixed Frequency Change-Over 2* **67**	Function / active fixed value
0	0	*Fixed Frequency 1* **480**
1	0	*Fixed Frequency 2* **481**
1	1	*Fixed Frequency 3* **482**
0	1	*Fixed Frequency 4* **483**

0 = contact open 1 = contact closed

By combining the logic states of the fixed percentage change-over modes 1 and 2, fixed frequencies 1 through 4 can be selected:

Fixed Percentage Control

Fixed percentage value change-over 1 **75**	*Fixed percentage value change-over 2* **76**	Function / active fixed value
0	0	*Fixed Percentage 1* **520**
1	0	*Fixed Percentage 2* **521**
1	1	*Fixed Percentage 3* **522**
0	1	*Fixed Percentage 4* **523**

0 = contact open 1 = contact closed

14.4.9 Motor Potentiometer

The parameters *Reference Frequency Source* **475**, and *Reference Percentage Source* **476** contain operation modes with motor potentiometer. *Operation Mode* **474** defines the behavior of the motor potentiometer function and the parameters *Frequency Motorpoti Up* **62**, *Frequency Motorpot. Down* **63** or *Percent Motorpoti Up* **72**, *Percent Motorpot. Down* **73** the link to the available logic signals.

Motor Potentiometer Control		
Motorpoti Up	Motorpoti Down	**Function**
0	0	Output signal does not change.
1	0	Output value rises at set ramp.
0	1	Output value drops at set ramp.
1	1	Output value is reset to initial value.

0 = contact open 1 = contact closed

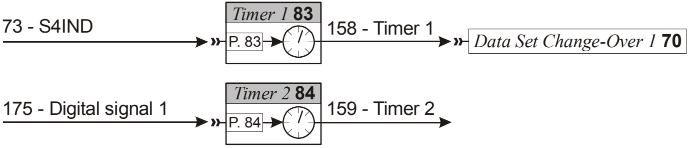
14.5 Function Modules

14.5.1 Timer

The timer function can be linked to various functions for time-control of digital signals. The parameters *Operation Mode Timer 1* **790** and *Operation Mode Timer 2* **793** define the evaluation of the digital input signals and the unit of time of the time function.

Operation mode 790, 793	Function
0 - Off	Signal output is switched off.
1 - Normal, Rising Edge, Sec.	Positive signal edge starts timer (trigger), time 1 delays the output signal, time 2 defines the signal period.
2 - Retrigger, Rising Edge, Sec.	Positive signal edge starts timer (trigger), next positive signal edge within time 1 starts the delay in time again (Retrigger), time 2 defines the signal period.
3 - AND-Connect., Rising Edge, Sec.	Positive signal edge starts timer (trigger), if no input signal is received within time 1 the delay starts again (Retrigger), if no input signal is received within time 2, the signal period is terminated.
11 to 13	Operation modes 1...3, negative signal edge starts timer.
101 to 113	Operation modes 1...3, [in minutes].
201 to 213	Operation modes 1...3, [in hours].

By default, the functions are linked according to the following illustration:



The sources of the digital signals (e.g. 73-S4IND, 175-Digital signal 1) are selected via the parameters *Timer 1* **83** and *Timer 2* **84**. Timer 1 is linked to digital input 4 and Timer 2 is linked to the logic signal digital signal 1.
The output signal of the timer can be assigned via the corresponding parameters of the operation mode of a digital input or output. By default, *Data Set Change-Over 1* is linked to Timer 1 and *Digital Output 1* **530** is linked to Timer 2.

14.5.1.1 Time Constant

The logic sequence of input and output signals is to be set separately for both timer functions via the time constants. The default parameter values result in a direct link of the input and output signal without a delay.

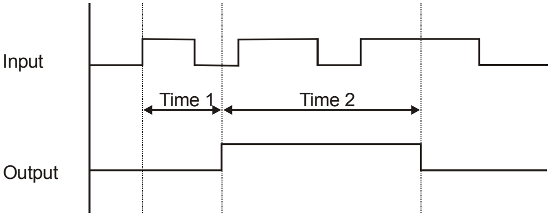
Note: Before starting the timer, select the operation mode and set the times in order to avoid non-defined states.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
791	Time 1 Timer 1, signal delay	0.00 s/m/h	650.00 s/m/h	0.00 s/m/h
792	Time 2 Timer 1, signal duration	0.00 s/m/h	650.00 s/m/h	0.00 s/m/h
794	Time 1 Timer 2, signal delay	0.00 s/m/h	650.00 s/m/h	0.00 s/m/h
795	Time 2 Timer 2, signal duration	0.00 s/m/h	650.00 s/m/h	0.00 s/m/h

Examples of the timer function depending on the selected operation mode and the input signal:

Normal, positive edge

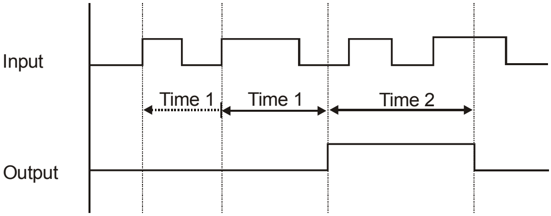
Parameter *Operation mode Timer* **= 1**



As soon as the positive signal edge is received at the input, time 1 starts. After the expiry of the delay, the output signal is activated for signal duration time 2.

Retrigger, positive edge

Parameter *Operation mode Timer* **= 2**

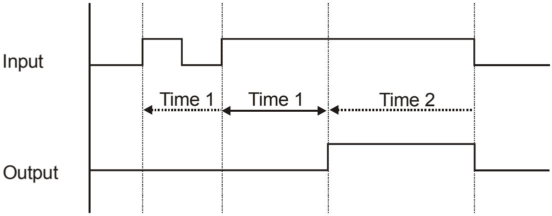


As soon as the positive signal edge is received at the input, time 1 is started. If a positive signal edge is detected within the delay, time 1 starts again. After the expiry of the delay, the output signal is switched for the signal duration time 2.

⇠: Time not run out completely
⟷: Time run out completely

AND connection, positive edge

Parameter *Operation mode Timer* **= 3**



As soon as the positive signal edge is received at the input, time 1 is started. If a positive signal edge is detected within the delay, time 1 starts again. After the expiry of the delay, the output signal is switched for the signal duration time 2. Within the signal duration time 2, the output is switched off by the input signal. If the input signal is present during the whole time 2, the output signal remains on in this time.

⇠: Time not run out completely
⟷: Time run out completely

14.5.2 Comparator

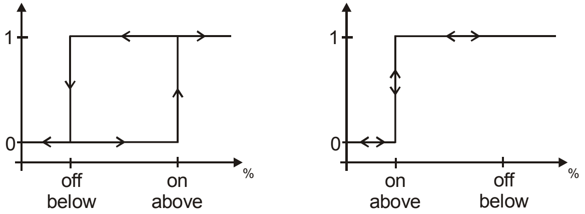
With the help of software functions Comparator 1 and 2, various comparisons of actual values with percentage-adjustable fixed values can be done.
The actual values to be compared can be selected from the following table with the parameters *Op. Mode Comparator 1* **540** and *Op. Mode Comparator 2* **543**.
If an expansion module is connected, further operation modes are available.

Operation mode 540, 543	Function
0 - Off	Comparator is switched off.
1 - Absolute current	*R.m.s Current* **211** > *Rated Current* **371**.
2 - Abs. Active Current	*Active Current* **214** > *Rated Current* **371**.
3 - Abs. Stator Frequency	*Stator Frequency* **210** > *Maximum Frequency* **419**.
4 - Abs. Actual Speed 1	*Encoder 1 Speed* **218** > maximum speed (calculated from *Maximum Frequency* **419** and *No. of Pole Pairs* **373**).
5 - Abs. Actual Repetition Freq.	*Repetition Frequency Input* **252** >*Maximum Frequency* **419**.
6 - Winding Temp., Temp. Follow-Up.	*Winding Temperature* **226** > temperature 100 °C.
7 - Abs. Actual Frequency	*Actual Frequency* **241** > *Maximum Frequency* **419**.
9 - DC link voltage	*DC Link Voltage* **222** > Direct voltage 1000 V.
10 - Abs. Isq	*Isq* **216** > *Rated Current* **371**.
11 - Abs Filtered Active Current	*Active Current* **214** > *Rated Current* **371**.
12 - Abs. Internal Ref. Frequency	*Internal Reference Frequency* **228** > *Maximum Frequency* **419**.
13 - Abs. Ref. Percentage Value	*Reference Percentage Value* **229** > *Maximum Reference Percentage* **519**.
14 - Abs. Actual Percentage Value	*Actual Percentage Value* **230** > *Maximum Reference Percentage* **519**.
15 - Analog Input MFI1A Abs. Amount	*Analog Input MFI1A* **251** > input signal 100 %.
100 to 107	Operation modes with signs (+/-).

The switch-on and switch-off thresholds for compactors 1 and 2 are set by the parameters *Comparator On above* **541**, **544** and *Comparator Off below* **542**, **545**.
The percentage limits of the corresponding reference values are indicated.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
541	Comparator 1 On above	- 300.00 %	300.00 %	100.00 %
542	Comparator 1 Off below	- 300.00 %	300.00 %	50.00 %
544	Comparator 2 On above	- 300.00 %	300.00 %	100.00 %
545	Comparator 2 Off below	- 300.00 %	300.00 %	50.00 %

The setting of the percentage limits of the comparators enables the following logical links. The comparison with signs is possible in the corresponding operation modes of the comparators.



14.5.3 Logic Modules

With the Logic Modules function, it is possible to link external digital signals and internal logic signals of the frequency inverter to one another. Four identical logic modules are available. These modules can be parameterized independent of one another. The results of the logic operations can be used for further functions within and outside of the frequency inverter. In addition to the combinatory logic functions AND, OR and EXOR, the sequential logic functions RS flip-flop, D flip-flop and Toggle flip-flop are available.

Each module has two logic inputs and one logic output. The inputs can be parameterized and can be assigned to different signal sources. The signal sources are listed in the logic table in chapter "Digital Inputs". Additionally, the logic modules can be interconnected to each other via the corresponding parameterization. The functionality of the parameters is the same in each of the four logic modules.

Note: The logic modules are processed internally in the frequency inverter one after the other depending on their number. For example, logic module 1 is processed before logic module 2.
When designing application-specific logic links, e.g. in the case of time-critical applications:
- Make sure to comply with the correct order of the logic modules.
- Observe the processing time of 16 ms.

The following table shows the assignment of the parameters to the individual logic modules:

Module	Operation mode	Input 1	Input 2
Logic module 1	*Operation Mode Logic 1* **198**	*Input 1 Logic 1* **199**	*Input 2 Logic* 1 **200**
Logic module 2	*Operation Mode Logic 2* **201**	*Input 1 Logic 2* **202**	*Input 2 Logic 2* **203**
Logic module 3	*Operation Mode Logic 3* **205**	*Input 1 Logic 3* **206**	*Input 2 Logic 3*, **207**
Logic module 4	*Operation Mode Logic 4* **503**	*Input 1 Logic 4* **504**	*Input 2 Logic 4* **505**

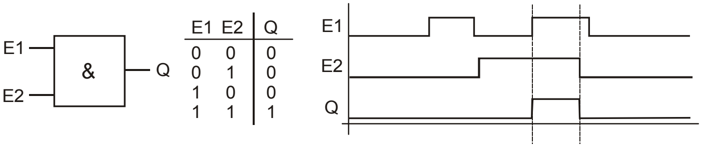
The parameters *Operation Mode Logic 1* **198**, *Operation Mode Logic 2* **201**, *Operation Mode Logic 3* **205** and *Operation Mode Logic 4* **503** include the following functions:

Operation mode	Function
0 - Off	Signal output is switched off.
1 - AND	Input 1 and input 2 are linked to each other via a logic AND operation.
2 - OR	Input 1 and input 2 are linked to each other via a logic OR operation.
3 - XOR	Input 1 and input 2 are linked to each other via a logic Exclusive OR operation. Output Q will be logic "1" only if different logic levels are present at input 1 and input 2.
10 - RS Flip-Flop	Input 1 is the set input, input 2 is the reset input of the RS flip-flop. Logic "1" at the set input will set output Q to "1". Logic "1" at the reset input will set output Q to "0". If logic "0" is present at both inputs, the output signal is kept at the last status.
20 - Toggle Flip-Flop	The output signal changes with the positive edge of the clock signal at input 1. Input 2 is wired internally in this configuration.
30 - D Flip-Flop	If a positive clock edge is received at input 2 (clock pulse input C), the signal present at input 1 (data input D) is transmitted to output Q.

Examples of the logic functions depending on the selected operation mode:

AND Operation

Parameter *Operation Mode Logic* = **1**



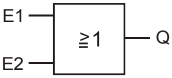
E1	E2	Q
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

E1: input 1; E2: input 2; Q: output

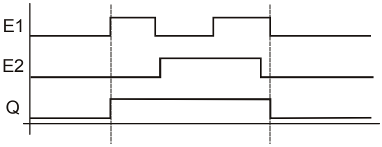
If logic "1" is present at input 1 and input 2, output Q is logic "1". If both inputs or either one input are logic "0", output Q will be logic "0", too.

OR Operation

Parameter *Operation Mode Logic* = **2**



E1	E2	Q
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

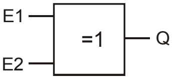


E1: input 1; E2: input 2; Q: output

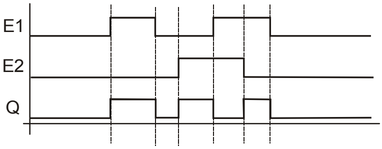
If logic "1" is present at input 1 or input 2 or at both inputs, output Q is "1". If both inputs are "0", output Q will be logic "0", too.

EXOR Operation

Parameter *Operation Mode Logic* = **3**



E1	E2	Q
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

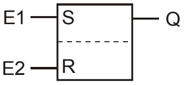


E1: input 1; E2: input 2; Q: output

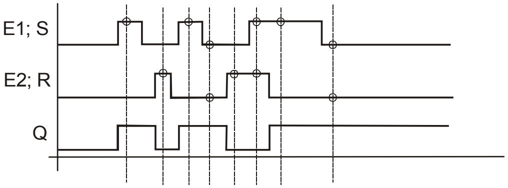
Output Q is logic "1" if inputs 1 and 2 have different logic states. If both inputs have the same logic state, output Q will be logic "0".

RS Flip-Flop

Parameter *Operation Mode Logic* = **10**



E1 S	E2 R	Q	Status
0	0	Q_{n-1}	hold
0	1	0	reset
1	0	1	set
1	1	0	off

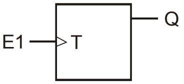


E1: set; E2:reset; Q: output

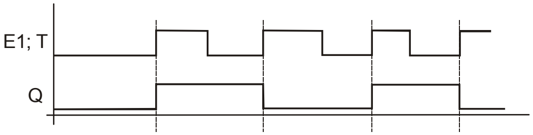
Set:	Logic "1" at the set input will set output Q to logic "1".
Store:	If a logic "0" is present at the S input, output Q remains unchanged.
Reset:	If the R input is set to logic "1", output Q is set to logic "0".
Off:	If both inputs are set to logic "1", output Q will be logic "0".

Toggle Flip-Flop

Parameter *Operation Mode Logic* = **20**



E1 T	Q	Status
1	Q_{n-1}	hold
0–>1	$\overline{Q_{n-1}}$	output invers (toggle)
1–>0	Q_{n-1}	hold
0	Q_{n-1}	hold



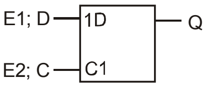
E1: clock input T; Q: output

The T flip-flop changes its output state with each positive clock edge at input 1 (clock pulse input T). In all other signal states of the clock input (static logic "0" or logic "1" or negative clock edge), the output signal remains unchanged.

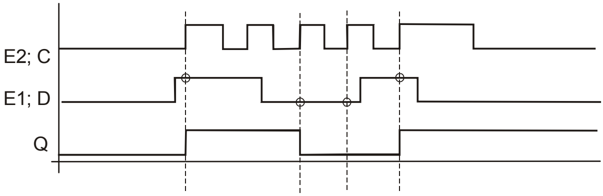
Note: Input 2 is deactivated in this configuration. A parameterization of input 2 via the corresponding parameters will be have no effect for this reason.

D Flip-Flop

Parameter *Operation Mode Logic* = **30**



E1 D	E2 C	Q	Status
0	0	Q_{n-1}	hold
1	0	Q_{n-1}	hold
0	0–>1	0	sample
1	0–>1	1	sample



E1: data input D; E2: clock input C; Q: output

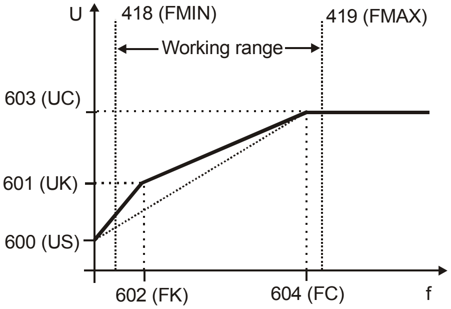
If logic "0" is present at input 2 (clock input C), the previous logic state is maintained at the output independent of the status of input 1 (data input D).
If a positive clock edge is received at clock pulse input C, the signal present at data input D is transmitted to the output. The output maintains its state Q_{n-1} until the next positive clock edge is received.
If a negative clock edge is received, the output signal remains unchanged.

15 V/f - Characteristic

The sensor-less control in configurations 110 and 111 is based on the proportional change of output voltage compared to the output frequency according to the configured characteristic.

By setting the V/f-characteristic, the voltage of the connected 3-phase motor is controlled according to the frequency. The torque to be applied by the motor at the corresponding operating point demands the control of the output voltage proportional to the frequency. At a constant output voltage / output frequency ratio of the frequency inverter, the magnetization is constant in the nominal operating range of the 3-phase motor. The rating point of the motor or end point of the V/f-characteristic is set via the guided commissioning with the parameter *Cut-Off Voltage* **603** and the parameter *Cut-Off Frequency* **604**.

The lower frequency range, where an increased voltage is necessary for the start of the drive, is critical. The voltage at output frequency = zero is set with the parameter *Starting Voltage* **600**. An increase in voltage deviating from the linear course of the V/f-characteristic can be defined by the parameters *Voltage Rise* **601** and *Rise Frequency* **602**. The percentage parameter figure is calculated from the linear V/f-characteristic. Via the parameters *Minimum Frequency* **418** and *Maximum Frequency* **419**, the working range of the machine or the V/f-characteristic is defined.



(FMIN): *Minimum Frequency* **418**, (FMAX): *Maximum Frequency* **419**,
(US): *Starting Voltage* **600**,
(UK): *Voltage Rise* **601**, (FK): *Rise Frequency* **602**,
(UC): *Cut-Fff Voltage* **603**, (FC): *Cut-Off Frequency* **604**

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
600	Starting Voltage	0.0 V	100.0 V	5.0 V
601	Voltage Rise	-100 %	200 %	10 %
602	Rise Frequency	0 %	100 %	20 %
603	Cut-Off Voltage	60.0 V	560.0 V	400.0 V
604	Cut-Off Frequency	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	50.00 Hz

Note: The guided commissioning takes the parameterized rated motor values and reference data of the frequency inverter into account when it comes to pre-setting the V/f-characteristic. In the case of three-phase machines, the speed can be increased at a constant torque if the motor winding can be switched over from star to delta connection. If the data for delta connection indicated on the name plate of the three-phase motor were entered, the cut-off frequency is increased automatically by the square root of three.

The default *Cut-Off Voltage* **603 (UC)** and *Cut-Off Frequency* **604 (FC)** are derived from the motor data *Rated Voltage* **370** and *Rated Frequency* **375**. With the parameterized *Starting Voltage* **600 (US)**, the linear equation of the V/f-characteristic results.

$$U = \left(\frac{UC - US}{FC - 0}\right) \cdot f + US = \left(\frac{400.0\,V - 5.0\,V}{50.00\,Hz - 0.00\,Hz}\right) \cdot f + 5.0\,V$$

The *Rise Frequency* **602 (FK)** is entered as a percentage of the *Cut-Off Frequency* **604 (FC)**, the default value is f=10 Hz. The output voltage for the default *Voltage Rise* **601 (UK)** is calculated as U=92.4V.

$$U = \left[\left(\frac{UC - US}{FC - 0}\right) \cdot (FK \cdot FC) + US\right] \cdot (1 + UK) = \left[\left(\frac{400\,V - 5\,V}{50\,Hz - 0\,Hz}\right) \cdot (0.2 \cdot 50\,Hz) + 5\,V\right] \cdot 1.1 = \underline{\underline{92.4\,V}}$$

15.1 Dynamic Voltage Pre-Control

The *Dyn. Voltage Pre-Control* **605** accelerates the control behavior of the current limit controller (parameter *Operation Mode* **610**) and the voltage controller (parameter *Operation Mode* **670**). The output voltage value resulting from the V/f characteristic is changed by addition of the calculated voltage pre-control.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
605	Dyn. Voltage Pre-Control	0 %	200 %	100 %

16 Control Functions

The frequency inverters provide a selection of established control methods in *Configuration* **30**. The selected control structure can be parameterized as required and optimized for the application by further functions.

16.1 Intelligent current limits

The current limits to be set according to the application avoid inadmissible loading of the connected load and prevent a fault switch-off of the frequency inverter. The function extends the current controller available in the control system. The overload reserve of the frequency inverter can be used optimally by means of the intelligent current limits, in particular in applications with dynamic load alternations. The criterion to be selected via the parameter *Operation Mode* **573** defines the threshold to the activation of the intelligent current limit. The parameterized rated motor current or the reference current of the frequency inverter is synchronized as the limit value of the intelligent current limits.

Operation mode	Function
0 - Off	The function is switched off.
1 - Ixt	Limitation to the overload of the frequency inverter (Ixt).
10 - Tc	Limitation to the maximum heat sink temperature (T_C).
11 - Ixt + Tc	Operation mode 1 and 10 (Ixt + T_C).
20 - Motor Temp.	Limitation to the motor temperature (T_{Motor}).
21 - Motor Temp.+ Ixt	Operation mode 20 and 1 (T_{Motor} + Ixt).
30 - Tc + Motor Temp.	Operation mode 10 and 20 (T_C + T_{Motor}).
31 - Tc + Motor Temp. + Ixt	Operation mode 10, 20 and (T_C + T_{Motor}+ Ixt).

The threshold value selected via the parameter *Operation Mode* **573** is monitored by the intelligent current limits. In the operation modes with motor and heat sink temperature monitoring, the reduction of power selected with the parameter *Power Limit* **574** is done when the threshold value has been reached. This is achieved by a reduction of the output current and the speed in motor operation. The load behavior of the connected machine must be a function of the speed to ensure a sensible use of the intelligent current limits. The total time of the power reduction as a result of an increased motor or heat sink temperature contains not only the cooling time, but also the additionally defined *Limitation Time* **575**.
The definition of the power limit should be selected as small as possible in order to give the drive sufficient time to cool down. The reference value is the nominal power of the frequency inverter or the set rated power of the motor.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
574	Power Limit	40.00 %	95.00 %	80.00 %
575	Limitation Time	5 min	300 min	15 min

In the operation modes with overload reserve (Ixt) there is a reduction of the output current when the threshold value is exceeded, with a distinction being made between long and short-term overload reserve. After the short-term overload (1 s) has been used up, the output current is reduced to the long-term overload current matching the present switching frequency. After the long-term overload current has been used up (60 s), the output current is reduced to the rated current which also depends on the switching frequency. If the output current has already been reduced due to the fact that the long-term overload has used up, the short-term overload is no longer available even if it has not been used up beforehand. The defined overload reserve (Ixt) of the frequency inverter is available again after a power reduction lasting 10 minutes.

16.2 Voltage controller

The voltage controller contains the functions necessary for monitoring the DC link voltage.

– The DC link voltage which rises in generator operation or in the braking process of the 3-phase machine is controlled to the set limit value by the voltage controller.
– The mains failure regulation uses the rotation energy of the drive to bridge short-term power failures.

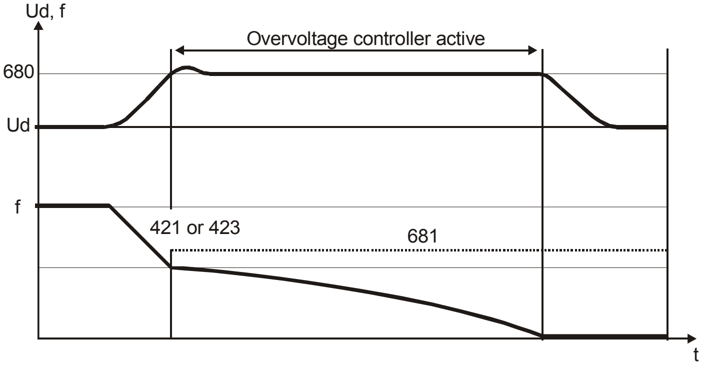
The voltage controller is set with the parameter *Operation Mode* **670** in accordance with the application.

Operation mode	Function
0 - Off	The function is switched off.
1 - Udc-Limitation active	Overvoltage controller switched on, with motor chopper.
2 - Mains Support active	Mains failure regulation switched on, with motor chopper, for quick shutdown.
3 - Udc-Limit. & Mains Supp. active	Overvoltage controller and mains failure regulation switched on, with motor chopper.
12 - Mains Support active, Chopper not active	Mains failure regulation switched on, without motor chopper.
13 - Udc-Limit. & Mains Supp. active, without Chopper	Overvoltage controller and mains failure regulation switched on, without motor chopper.

The function motor chopper is available in the field-oriented control methods (in configurations 210, 230, 410, 411 and 430).

When an operation mode with motor chopper is selected, set the *Trigger Threshold* **507** to the *Reference DC-Link Limitation* **680**.

Operation mode Overvoltage control,
Voltage controller: Parameter *Operation Mode* **670 = 1**

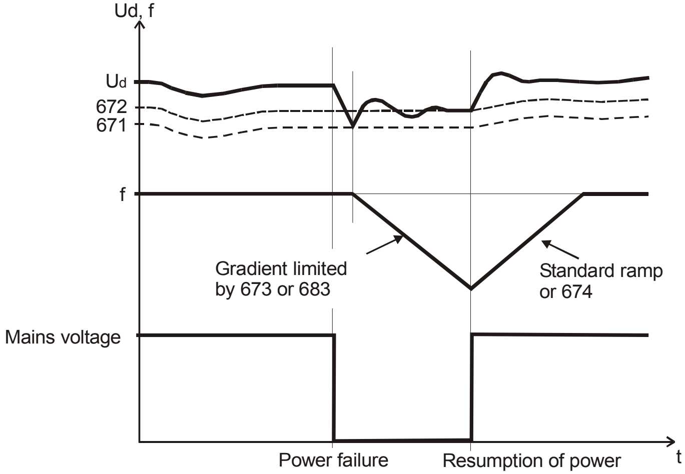


The overvoltage controller prevents a switch-off of the frequency inverter in generator operation. The reduction of the drive speed by a ramp gradient selected via the parameter *Deceleration Clockwise* **421** or *Deceleration Anticlockwise* **423** can lead to an overvoltage in the DC link.

If the voltage exceeds the value set by the parameter *Reference DC-Link Limitation* **680**, the deceleration is reduced in such a way that the DC link voltage is regulated to the set value. If the DC link voltage cannot be regulated to the set reference value by the reduction of the deceleration, the deceleration is stopped and the output frequency raised. The output frequency is calculated by addition of the parameter value *Max. Frequency Rise* **681** to the frequency at the operating point of the controller intervention.

Parameter		Settings			
No.	**Description**	**ACT**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
680	Reference DC-Link Limitation	201	225	387.5	380
		401	425	775	760
681	Max. Frequency Rise		0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	10.00 Hz

Operation mode mains failure regulation.
Voltage controller: Parameter *Operation Mode* **670 = 2**



With the mains failure regulation, short-term mains failures can be bridged. A mains failure is recognized if the DC link voltage has fallen below the set value of the parameter *Mains Failure Threshold* **671**. If a mains failure is recognized, the controller tries to regulate the DC link voltage to the value set with the parameter *Reference Mains Support Value* **672**. For this, the output frequency is continuously reduced and the motor with its rotating masses put into generator operation. The reduction of the output frequency is done according to the configuration with a maximum of the current set by the parameter *Gen. Ref. Current Limit* **683** or the ramp *Mains Support Deceleration* **673**.

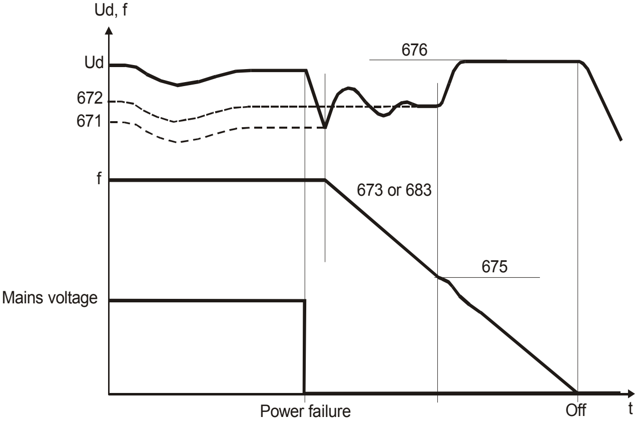
The threshold values of the voltage controller are calculated starting with the current DC link voltage leading from the parameters *Mains Failure Threshold* **671** and *Reference Mains support Value* **672**.

If the mains voltage is restored before a switch-off is effected by the mains undervoltage detection system, the drive is accelerated to its reference frequency at the set acceleration or according to the parameter *Acceleration on Mains Resumption* **674**. If the value of parameter *Acceleration on Mains Resumption* **674** is set to the default value of 0.00 Hz/s, the drive is accelerated at the values set for the ramp parameters *Acceleration (Clockwise)* **420** or *Acceleration Anticlockwise* **422**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
671	Mains Failure Threshold	-200.0 V	-50.0 V	-100.0 V
672	Reference Mains Support Value	-200.0 V	-10.0 V	-40.0 V

Note: The frequency inverter reacts to the signals at the control inputs both when the power failure regulation is switched on and in normal operation. A control via externally supplied control signals is only possible in the case of a no-break supply. As an alternative, supply through the frequency inverter is to be used.

Operation mode mains failure regulation (continued)



The DC link voltage which is available in the case of a power failure is supplied by the motor. The output frequency is continuously reduced and the motor with its rotating masses is switched over to generator operation. The maximum reduction of the output frequency is done at the current set by the parameter *Gen. Ref. Current Limit* **683** or the ramp *Mains Support Deceleration* **673** until the frequency limit *Shutdown Threshold* **675** is reached. If the energy of the system for bridging the mains failure is not sufficient, the delay occurs at maximum ramp gradient as from the *Shutdown Threshold* **675**.

The time required until the motor has come to a standstill results from the regenerative energy of the system which results in an increase in the DC link voltage. The DC link voltage set with the parameter *Reference Shutdown Value* **676** is used by the voltage controller as a control figure and kept constant. The voltage rise enables optimization of the braking behavior and the time until the drive has come to a standstill. The behavior of the controller can be compared to stopping behavior 2 (Shutdown + Stop), as the voltage controller brings the drive to a standstill at the maximum deceleration ramp and supplies it with the remaining DC link voltage.

If the mains voltage is restored after the shutdown of the drive but before the undervoltage switch-off has been reached, the frequency inverter signals a fault. The control unit displays the fault message "F0702".

If the mains failure without shutdown (*Shutdown Threshold* **675** = 0 Hz) takes so long that the frequency has been reduced to 0 Hz, the drive is accelerated to the reference frequency when the mains supply is restored.

If the mains failure with or without shutdown takes so long that the frequency inverter shuts off completely (LEDs = OFF), the frequency inverter will be in the "Standby" state when the mains supply is restored. If the inverter is released again, the drive will start. If the drive is to start automatically after restoration of the mains supply and if the inverter is released permanently, *Operation Mode* **651** of Auto Start must be switched on.

Parameter		Settings			
No.	**Description**	**ACT**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
675	Shutdown Threshold		0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	0.00 Hz
676	Reference Shutdown Value	201	225	387.5	365
		401	425	775	730

The voltage controller uses the limit values of the DC link voltage. The frequency change necessary for this is parameterized by the generator reference current value or rather the ramp. The *Gen. Ref. Current Limit* **683** or the ramp *Mains Support Deceleration* **673** defines the maximum deceleration of the drive necessary in order to reach the voltage value *Reference Mains Support Value* **672**. The *Acceleration on Mains Resumption* **674** replaces the set values of the ramp parameters *Acceleration (Clockwise)* **420** or *Acceleration Anticlockwise* **422** if the value set in the factory is changed. The voltage control in a mains failure changes from the frequency limit *Shutdown Threshold* **675** from *Reference Mains Support Value* **672** to the *Reference Shutdown Value* **676**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
683	Gen. Ref. Current Limit	0.0 A	o · I_{FIN}	I_{FIN}
673	Mains Support Deceleration	0.01 Hz/s	9999.99 Hz/s	50.00 Hz/s
674	Acceleration on Mains Resumption	0.00 Hz/s	9999.99 Hz/s	0.00 Hz/s

The proportional and integrating part of the current controller can be set via parameters *Amplification* **677** and *Integral Time* **678**. The control functions are deactivated by setting the parameters to 0. The controllers are P and I controllers in the corresponding settings.

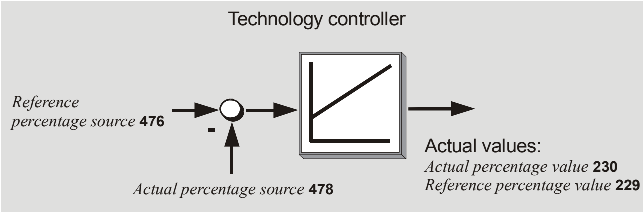
Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
677	Amplification	0.00	30.00	- [1]
678	Integral Time	0 ms	10000 ms	- [1]

[1] The factory settings are depending on the selected control function. Corresponding with the setting of the parameter *Configuration* **30** the following values are assigned:
Configuration 1xx: *Amplification* **677** = 1.0 / *Integral Time* **678** = 8 ms
Configuration 2xx; 4xx: *Amplification* **677** = 2.0 / *Integral Time* **678** = 23 ms

16.3 Technology Controller

The technology controller, the behavior of which corresponds to a PI controller, is available as an additional function in configuration 111, 211 and 411. The connection of reference and actual value of the application with the functions of the frequency inverter enables process control without further components. In this way, applications such as pressure, volume flow or speed control can be implemented easily.
The configuration of the reference percentage source and the assignment of the actual percentage source are to be considered.

Structural image: Technology Controller

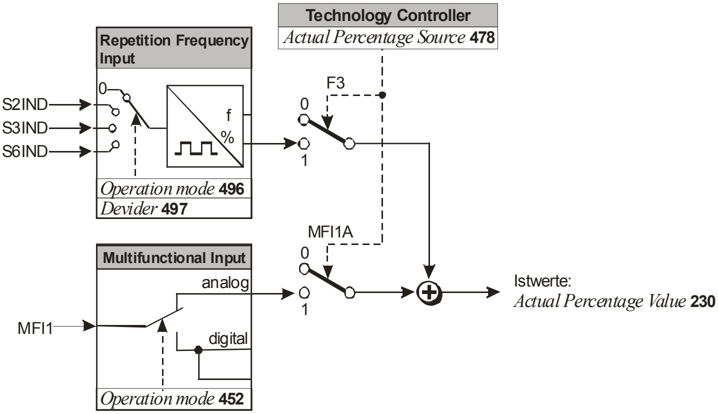

Technology controller
Reference percentage source **476**
-
Actual percentage source **478**
Actual values:
Actual percentage value **230**
Reference percentage value **229**

For the reference value, the technology controller also demands the assignment of an analog application value with the parameter *Actual Percentage Source* **478**. The difference between reference and actual value is used by the technology controller to control the drive system. The measured actual value is mapped via a signal converter onto the input signal of the reference percentage source.

Operation mode 478	Function
1 - Analog Input MFI1A	The analog signal on the multifunctional input 1 in *Operation Mode* **452** - analog operation.
32 - Rep. Frequency Input (F3)	The frequency signal at the digital input according to the selected *Operation Mode* **496**.

Caution! The default assignment of parameter *Start clockwise* **68** to the logic signal of the technology controller must be observed:
Start Clockwise **68** = 13 - Technology Controller Start.
This assignment may not be changed. The technology controller becomes active with the controller release at digital input S1IND.

Structural image: Inputs for Actual Percentage Source


Technology Controller
Actual Percentage Source **478**
Repetition Frequency Input
0
S2IND
S3IND
S6IND
f
%
Operation mode **496**
Devider **497**
F3
0
1
MFI1A
0
1
Multifunctional Input
analog
digital
MFI1
Operation mode **452**
Istwerte:
Actual Percentage Value **230**

The function selected via the parameter *Operation Mode* **440** defines the behavior of the technology controller

Operation mode **440**	Function
0 - Off	The technology controller is switched off, the reference value specification is done via the reference percentage channel.
1 - Standard	For pressure and volume flow control with linear operating behavior and actual value monitoring.
2 - Liquid Level 1	Contents level control at defined motor speed with actual value missing.
3 - Liquid Level 2	Contents level control at defined motor speed with actual value missing or high control deviation.
4 - Speed controller	Speed control with analog feedback of the actual speed.
5 - Indirect volume flow control	Volume flow control with square rooted actual value.

The behavior of the technology controller corresponds to a PI controller with the components

- proportional component *Amplification* **444**
- integral component *Integral time* **445**

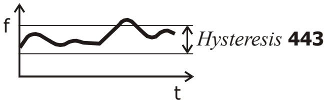
The sign of the amplification determines the direction of control, i.e. with a rising actual value and pos. sign of the amplification, the output frequency is reduced (e.g. in pressure control). With a rising actual value and neg. sign of the amplification, the output frequency is increased (e.g. in temperature control systems, refrigerating machines, condensers).

The integral component can be used to reduce the steady-state control deviation (deviation between actual value and reference value) over a period of time. If the integral component is too dynamic[1)] the system will be unstable and oscillates. If the integral component is too passive[2)] the steady-state control deviation will not be corrected adequately.
Therefore the integral component must be adjustet installation-dependent.

[1)] Dynamic behavior: fast correction of deviations.
[2)] Passive behavior: slow correction of deviations.

Parameter *Max. P-Component* **442** limits the frequency change at the controller output. This prevents oscillations of the system at steep acceleration ramps.

Via Parameter *Hysteresis* **443** changes of the integral component in a specified range (hysteresis band) can be rejected. This causes more passiv behavior of the technology controller and helps to filter noise signals of the controller actual value and to minimize control corrections.



Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
441	Fixed Frequency	-999.99 Hz	+999.99 Hz	0.00 Hz
442	max. P-Component	0.01 Hz	999.99 Hz	50.00 Hz
443	Hysteresis	0.01 %	100.00 %	10.00 %
444	Amplification	-15.00	+15.00	1.00
445	Integral Time	0 ms	32767 ms	200 ms
446	Ind. Volume Flow Control Factor	0.10	2.00	1.00

Note: The parameterization of the technology controller in the individual data sets enables an adaptation to various operating points of the application with the data set change-over via control contacts.

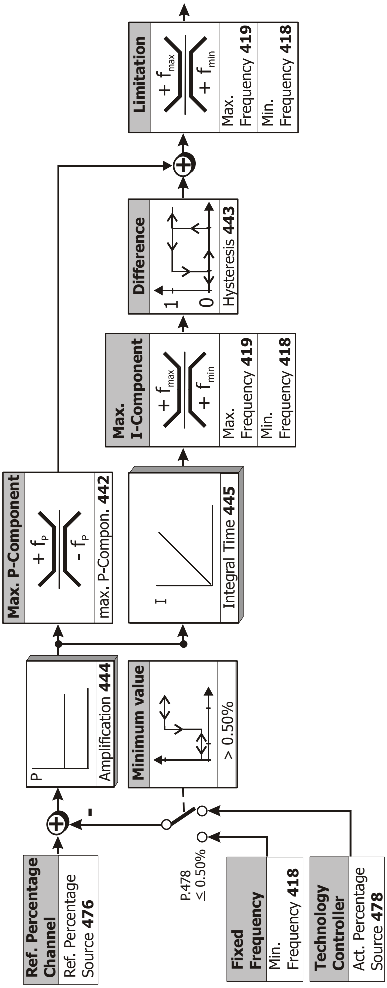
Operation mode standard, parameter *Operation Mode* **440 = 1**

This operation mode can be used, for example, for pressure or volumetric flow control with linear operation behavior.

The minimum value monitoring prevents an acceleration of the drive if the actual value is missing.

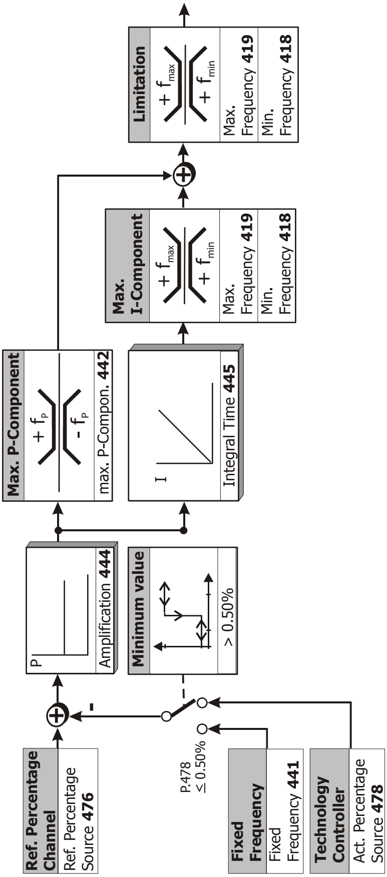
If the actual value is missing (< 0.5%) the output frequency is guided to the *Minimum frequency* **418**. This is done using the set *Deceleration (clockwise)* **421**.

If the actual value is available again, the controller continues operation automatically.


Limitation
+ f_{max}
+ f_{min}
Max. Frequency **419**
Min. Frequency **418**
Difference
1
0
Hysteresis **443**
Max. I-Component
+ f_{max}
+ f_{min}
Max. Frequency **419**
Min. Frequency **418**
Max. P-Component
+ f_P
- f_P
max. P-Compon. **442**
I
Integral Time **445**
P
Amplification **444**
Minimum value
> 0.50%
-
Ref. Percentage Channel
Ref. Percentage Source **476**
P.478
≤ 0.50%
Fixed Frequency
Min. Frequency **418**
Technology Controller
Act. Percentage Source **478**

Operation mode filling level 1, parameter *Operation Mode* 440 = 2

This operation mode can be used, for example, for contents level control.
If the actual value is missing, the function brings the output frequency to an adjustable value.
The minimum value monitoring prevents an acceleration of the drive if the actual value is missing.
If the actual value is missing (< 0.5%) the output frequency is guided to the *Fixed frequency* **441**. This is done using the set *Deceleration (clockwise)* **421**.
The *Fixed frequency* **441** must be in the range between *Minimum frequency* **418** and *Maximum frequency* **419**. If the *Fixed frequency* **441** is set to a value smaller than the *Minimum frequency* **418**, the output frequency is guided to *Minimum frequency* **418**. The frequency will not drop below *Minimum frequency* **418**.
If the actual value is available again, the controller continues operation automatically.


Limitation
+ f_max
+ f_min
Max. Frequency 419
Min. Frequency 418
Max. I-Component
+ f_max
+ f_min
Max. Frequency 419
Min. Frequency 418
Max. P-Component
+ f_P
- f_P
max. P-Compon. 442
I
Integral Time 445
P
Amplification 444
Minimum value
> 0.50%
-
P.478
≤ 0.50%
Ref. Percentage Channel
Ref. Percentage Source 476
Fixed Frequency
Fixed Frequency 441
Technology Controller
Act. Percentage Source 478

Operation mode filling level 2, parameter *Operation Mode* 440 = 3

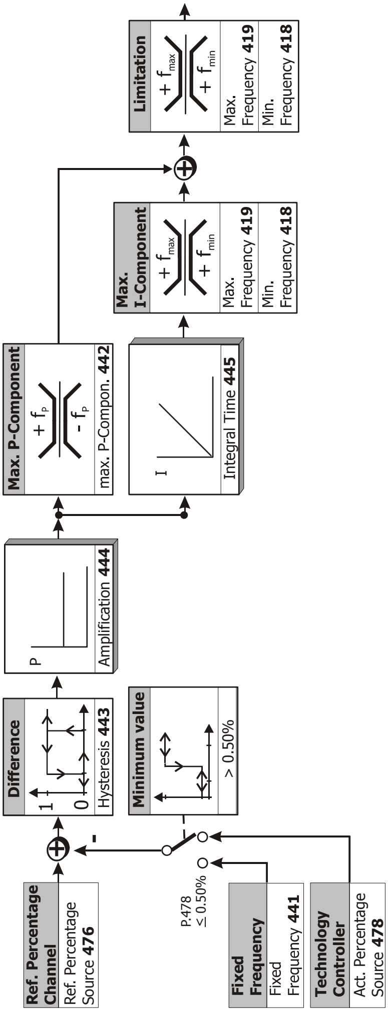
This operation mode can be used, for example, for contents level control.

The minimum value monitoring prevents an acceleration of the drive if the actual value is missing.

If the actual value is missing (< 0.5%) the output frequency is guided to the *Fixed frequency* **441**. This is done using the set *Deceleration (clockwise)* **421**.

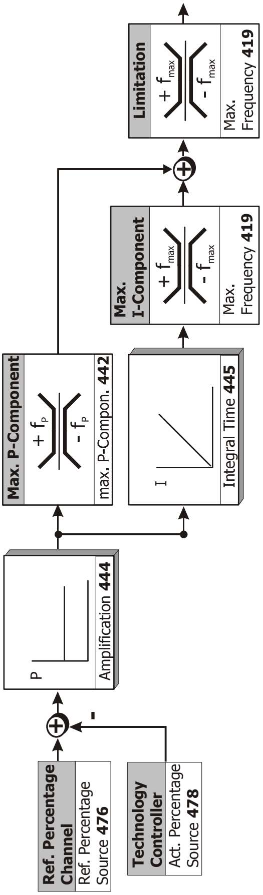
If there is no control deviation (actual value =reference value) or if the control deviation is negative (actual value>reference value), the output frequency is guided to *Minimum frequency* **418**. This is done using the set *Deceleration (clockwise)* **421**.

The drive accelerates as soon as an actual value is present again or the control deviation exceeds the positive *Hysteresis* **443**. The drive stops as soon as the the control deviation falls below the negative *Hysteresis* **443**.


Limitation
+ f_max
+ f_min
Max. Frequency 419
Min. Frequency 418
Max. I-Component
+ f_max
+ f_min
Max. Frequency 419
Min. Frequency 418
Max. P-Component
+ f_P
- f_P
max. P-Compon. 442
I
Integral Time 445
P
Amplification 444
Difference
1
0
Hysteresis 443
Minimum value
> 0.50%
-
P.478
≤ 0.50%
Ref. Percentage Channel
Ref. Percentage Source 476
Fixed Frequency
Fixed Frequency 441
Technology Controller
Act. Percentage Source 478

Operation mode speed controller, parameter *Operation Mode* **440 = 4**

This operation mode is suited for speed controls with an analog actual value transmitter (e.g. analog speedometer via analog input or HTL encoder via frequency input). The motor is accelerated or decelerated according to the control deviation. The output frequency is limited by the *Maximum frequency* **419**.


Limitation
$+ f_{max}$
$- f_{max}$
Max. Frequency 419
Max. I-Component
$+ f_{max}$
$- f_{max}$
Max. Frequency 419
Max. P-Component
$+ f_p$
$- f_p$
max. P-Compon. 442
I
Integral Time 445
P
Amplification 444
-
Ref. Percentage Channel
Ref. Percentage Source 476
Technology Controller
Act. Percentage Source 478

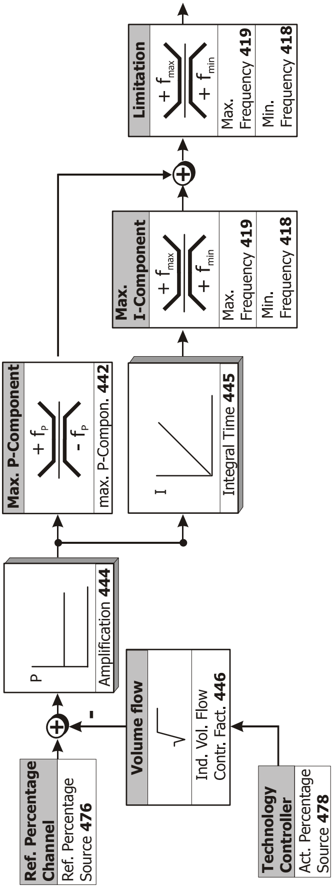
Operation mode indirect volume flow control, parameter *Operation Mode* 440 = 5

This operation mode is suitable for volume flow control based on pressure measurement.

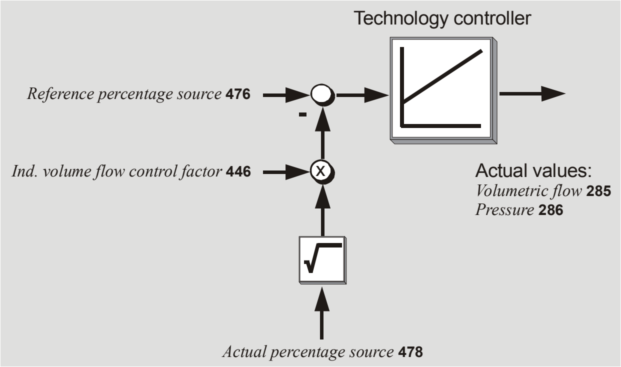
The square rooted actual value enables, for example, direct measurement of the active pressure in the system via the intake nozzle of the fan. The active pressure has a square proportion to the volume flow and thus forms the control figure for the volume flow control. The calculation corresponds to the "Law of Proportionality" which is generally valid for centrifugal machines.

Adaptation to the application in question and measurement are done via the *Ind. volume flow control factor* **446**. The actual values are calculated from the system data to be parameterized, reference pressure and volume flow, according to the bad point method, as described in chapter "Volume Flow and Pressure".

The output frequency is limited by the *Minimum frequency* **418** and *Maximum frequency* **419**.


Limitation
+ f_max
+ f_min
Max. Frequency 419
Min. Frequency 418
Max. I-Component
+ f_max
+ f_min
Max. Frequency 419
Min. Frequency 418
Max. P-Component
+ f_P
- f_P
max. P-Compon. 442
I
Integral Time 445
P
Amplification 444
-
Volume flow
Ind. Vol. Flow Contr. Fact. 446
Ref. Percentage Channel
Ref. Percentage Source 476
Technology Controller
Act. Percentage Source 478

Structural image: Indirect volume flow control


Technology controller
Reference percentage source **476**
-
Ind. volume flow control factor **446**
X
√
Actual values:
Volumetric flow **285**
Pressure **286**
Actual percentage source **478**

16.4 Functions of Sensorless Control

The configurations of the sensor-less control contain the following additional functions, which supplement the behavior according to the parameterized V/f characteristic.

16.4.1 Slip compensation

The load-dependent difference between the reference speed and the actual speed of the 3-phase motor is referred to as the slip. This dependency can be compensated by the current measurement in the output phases of the frequency inverter.

The activation of *Operation Mode* **660** for the slip compensation enables speed control without feedback. The stator frequency and speed are corrected depending on the load. Before the slip compensation can be activated, the guided commissioning has to be carried out. The *Stator Resistance* **377** is required to ensure a correct function and is measured during the guided commissioning.

Operation mode **660**	Function
0 - Off	The slip compensation is deactivated.
1 - Switched on	The load-dependent slip speed is compensated.

The control behavior of the slip compensation can only be optimized via the parameters in the case of specific applications. The parameter *Amplification* **661** determines the correction of the speed and the effect of the slip compensation proportionally to the change of load. The *Max. Slip Ramp* **662** defines the max. frequency change per second in order to avoid an overload in the case of a load change.
The parameter *Minimum Frequency* **663** determines the frequency as from which the slip compensation becomes active.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
661	Amplification	0.0 %	300.0 %	100.0 %
662	Max. Slip Ramp	0.01 Hz/s	650.00 Hz/s	5.00 Hz/s
663	Minimum Frequency	0.01 Hz	999.99 Hz	0.01 Hz

16.4.2 Current limit value controller

Via a load-dependent speed control, the current limit controller ensures that the drive system is not overloaded. This is extended by the intelligent current limits described in the previous chapter. The current limit value controller reduces the load on the drive, e.g. during acceleration, by stopping the acceleration ramp. The switch-off of the frequency inverter which happens when the acceleration ramps have been set at an excessive gradient is prevented in this way.
The current limit value controller is switched on and off via parameter *Operation Mode* **610.**

Operation Mode **610**	Function
0 - Off	The current limit controller functions and the intelligent current limits have been deactivated.
1 - Switched on	The current limit controller is active.

Behavior in motor operation:
If the current set via parameter *Current Limit* **613** is exceeded, the activated current limit controller will reduce the output frequency until the current limit is no longer exceeded. The output frequency is reduced, as a maximum, to the frequency set by parameter *Frequency Limit* **614**. If the current is below the *Current Limit* **613**, the output frequency increases to the reference value again.

Behavior in generator operation:
If the current set via parameter *Current Limit* **613** is exceeded, the activated current limit controller will increase the output frequency until the current limit is no longer exceeded. The output frequency is increased, as a maximum, to the set *Maximum Frequency* **419**. If the current is below the *Current Limit* **613**, the output frequency is reduced to the required reference value again.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
613	Current Limit	0.0 A	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$
614	Frequency Limit	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	0.00 Hz

The control behavior of the current limit controller can be set via the proportional component, parameter *Amplification* **611**, and the integrating component, parameter *Integral Time* **612**. If an optimization of the controller parameters is necessary in exceptional cases, a setting should be done by changing parameter *Current Limit* **613**abruptly.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
611	Amplification	0.01	30.00	1.00
612	Integral Time	1 ms	10000 ms	24 ms

Note: The dynamics of the current limit value controller and the voltage controller is influenced by the setting of the parameter *Dyn. Voltage Pre-Control* **605**.

16.5 Functions of Field-Orientated Control

The field-orientated control modes are based on a cascade control and the calculation of a complex machine model. In the course of the guided commissioning, a map of the connected machine is produced by the parameter identification and transferred to various parameters. Some of these parameters are visible and can be optimized for various operating points.

16.5.1 Current Controller

The inner control loop of the field-orientated control consists of two current controllers. The field-orientated control thus impresses the motor current into the machine via two components to be controlled.
This is done by:

- controlling the flux-forming current value I_{sd}
- controlling the torque-forming current value I_{sq}

By separate controlling of these two parameters, a decoupling of the system equivalent to an externally excited direct current machine is achieved.
The set-up of the two current controllers is identical and enables joint setting of amplification as well as the integral time for both controllers. For this, the parameters *Amplification* **700** and *Integral Time* **701** are available. The proportional and integration component of the current controllers can be switched off by setting the parameters to zero.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
700	Amplification	0.00	8.00	0.13
701	Integral Time	0.00 ms	10.00 ms	10.00 ms

The guided commissioning has selected the parameters of the current controller in such a way that they can be used without having to be changed in most applications.
If, in exceptional cases, an optimization of the behavior of the current controllers is to be done, the reference value step-change during the flux-formation phase can be used for this. If parameterized appropriately, the reference value of the flux-forming current components jumps to the value *Current During Flux-Formation* **781** and then changes in a controlled way to the magnetizing current after the expiry of the *Maximum Flux-Formation Time* **780**. The operating point necessary for the adjustment demands the setting of parameter *Minimum Frequency* **418** to 0.00 Hz, as the drive is accelerated after magnetizing. The measurement of the step response, which is defined by the ratio of the currents mentioned, should be done in the motor supply line by means of a measuring current transformer of a sufficient bandwidth.

Note: The internally calculated actual value for the flux-forming current component cannot be output via the analog output for this measurement as the time resolution of the measurement is not sufficient.

To set the parameters of the PI controller, the *Amplification* **700** is increased first until the actual value overshoots distinctly during the control process. Now, the amplification is reduced to about a half again and then the *Integral Time* **701** is synchronized until actual value overshoots slightly during the control process.
The settings of the current controllers should not be too dynamic in order to ensure a sufficient reserve range. The control tends to increased oscillations if the reserve range is reduced.

The dimensioning of the current controller parameters by calculation of the time constant is to be done for a switching frequency of 2 kHz. For other switching frequencies, the values are adapted internally so that the setting can remain unchanged for all switching frequencies. The dynamic properties of the current controller improve if the switching and scanning frequency increases.

The fixed time interval for the modulation results in the following scanning frequencies of the current controller via parameter *Switching Frequency* **400**.

Settings	
Switching frequency	**Scanning Frequency**
2 kHz [1]	2 kHz
4 kHz	4 kHz
8 kHz	8 kHz
12 kHz	8 kHz
16 kHz	8 kHz

[1] This switching frequency can only be set for the parameter *Min. Switching Frequency* **401**.

16.5.2 Torque Controller

The torque-controlled configurations 230 and 430 often demand limitation of the speed in the operating points without load moment. The controller increases the speed in order to reach the reference torque until the *Frequency Upper Limit* **767** or the *Frequency Lower Limit* **768** is reached. As from the limit value the drive is controlled to maximum speed, which corresponds to the behavior of the speed controller. Thus, the controller is limited to the *Maximum Frequency* **419**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
767	Frequency Upper Limit	-999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz
768	Frequency Lower Limit	-999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz	999.99 Hz

16.5.2.1 Limit Value Sources

The limitation of the frequency can be done by setting fixed values and also by linking to an analog input parameter. The analog value is limited via parameters *Minimum Reference Percentage* **518** and *Maximum Reference Percentage* **519**, but does not consider the *Gradient Percentage Ramp* **477** of the reference percentage value channel.

The assignment is done for the torque controller via parameters *Frequency Upper Limit Source* **769** and *Frequency Lower Limit Source* **770**.

Operation mode 769, 770	Function
101 - Analog Input MFI1A	The source is the multifunctional input 1 in an analog *Operation Mode* **452**.
110 - Fixed Limit	The selected parameter values are taken into account to limit the speed controller.
201 - Inv. Analog Input MFI1A	Operation mode 101, inverted.
210 - Inv. Fixed Limit	Operation mode 110, inverted.

16.5.3 Speed controller

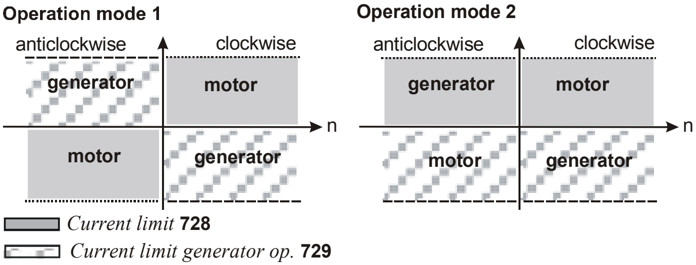
The source of the actual speed value is selected via parameter *Actual Speed Source* **766**. By default, speed sensor 1 is used as the actual speed source. If speed sensor 2 of an extension module is to deliver the actual value signal for the speed controller, speed sensor 2 must be selected as the source.

Actual Speed Source **766**	**Function**
1 - Speed Sensor 1	The actual speed source is speed sensor 1 of the basic device (factory setting).
2 - Speed Sensor 2	The actual speed source is speed sensor 2 of an extension module.[1]

[1] Only available if extension module is installed

The control of the torque-forming current components is done in the outer control loop by the speed controller. Via parameter *Operation Mode* **720**, you can select the operation mode for the speed controller. The operation mode defines the use of the parameterizable limits. These are referred to the direction of rotation and the direction of the torque and depend on the selected configuration.

Operation mode **720**	**Function**
0 - Speed Controller Off	The controller is deactivated or the torque-forming component is zero.
1 - Limits for Motor / Generator	The limitation of the speed controller assigns the upper limit to the motor operation of the drive. Independent of the direction of rotation, the same limit is used. The same applies in the case of regenerative operation with the lower limit.
2 - Limits for pos. / neg. Torque	The assignment of the limit is done by the sign of the value to be limited. Independent of the motor or generator operating points of the drive, the positive limitation is done by the upper limit. The lower limit is regarded as a negative limitation.



The properties of the speed controller can be adapted for adjustment and optimization of the controller. The amplification and integral time of the speed controller are to be set via parameters *Amplification 1* **721** and *Integral Time 1* **722**. For the second speed range, parameters *Amplification 2* **723**, *Integral Time 2* **724** can be set. The distinction between the speed ranges is done by the value selected via parameter *Speed Control Switch-Over Limit* **738**. The parameters *Amplification 1* **721** and *Integral time 1* **722** are taken into account in the case of the default parameter *Speed Control Switch-Over Limit* **738**. If parameter *Speed Control Switch-Over Limit* **738** is set to a value higher than 0.00 Hz, parameters *Amplification 1* **721**, *Integral Time 1* **722** are active below the limit and parameters *Amplification 2* **723**, *Integral Time 2* **724** are active above the limit.

The parameterized amplification at the current operating point can additionally be assessed via the parameter *Backlash Damping* **748** depending on the control deviation. In particular the small signal behavior in applications with a gearbox can be improved by a value higher than zero percent.

The parameter *Backlash damping* **748** is available depending on the device type.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
721	Amplification 1	0.00	200.00	- [1]
722	Integral Time 1	0 ms	60000 ms	- [1]
723	Amplification 2	0.00	200.00	- [1]
724	Integral Time 2	0 ms	60000 ms	- [1]
738	Speed Control Switch-Over Limit	0.00 Hz	999.99 Hz	55.00 Hz
748	Backlash Damping	0 %	300 %	100 %

[1] The default setting is relative to the recommended machine data for the amplification and integral time. This enables a first function test in a large number of applications. The distinction of the parameter settings 1 or 2 for the current frequency range is done by the software according to the selected limit value.

The optimization of the speed controller can be done with the help of a reference value step-change. The amount of the step-change is defined by the set ramp or limitation. The optimization of the PI controller should be done at the maximum admissible reference value change rate. First, the amplification is increased until the actual value overshoots distinctly during the control process. This is indicated by a strong oscillation of the speed and by the running noises. In the next step, reduce the amplification slightly (1/2 ...3/4 etc.). Then reduce the integral time (larger I component) until the actual value overshoots only slightly in the control process.

If necessary, check the speed control settings in the case of dynamic operations (acceleration, deceleration). The frequency at which a switch-over of the controller parameters is effected can be set via parameter *Speed Control Switch-Over Limit* **738.**

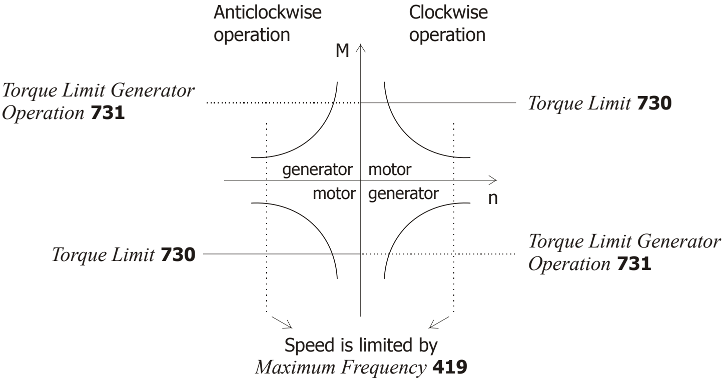
16.5.3.1 Limitation of Speed Controller

The output signal of the speed controller is the torque-forming current component Isq. The output and the I component of the speed controller can be limited via parameters *Current Limit* **728**, *Current Limit Generator Operation* **729**, *Torque Limit* **730**, *Torque Limit Generator Operation* **731** or *Power Limit* **739**, *Power Limit Generator Operation* **740**. The limits of the proportional component are set via parameter *P-Comp. Torque Upper Limit* **732** and parameter *P-Comp. Torque Lower Limit* **733**.

- The output value of the controller is limited by an upper and a lower current limit, parameter *Current Limit* **728** and parameter *Current Limit Generator Op.* **729**. The limit values are entered in Amperes. The current limits of the controller can be linked to the fixed limits and analog input parameters. The assignment is done via the parameters *Isq Limit Source Motor Op.* **734** and *Isq Limit Source Generator Op.* **735**.

- The output value of the controller is limited by an upper and a lower torque limit, parameter *Torque Limit* **730** and parameter *Torque Limit Generator Op..* **731.** The limit values are input as a percentage of the rated motor torque. The assignment of fixed values or analog limit values is done via the parameters *Torque Limit Source Motor Op.* **736** and *Torque Limit Source Gen. Op* **737**.
- The output value of the P component is limited with parameter *P-Comp. Torque Upper Limit* **732** and *P-Comp. Torque Lower Limit* **733**. The limit values are input as torque limits as a percentage of the rated motor torque.
- The power output by the motor is proportional to the product of speed and torque. This output power can be limited at the controller output with a *Power Limit* **739** and *Power Limit Generator Operation* **740**. The power limits are entered in kW.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
728	Current Limit	0.0 A	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$
729	Current Limit Generator Operation	-0.1 A	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$
730	Torque Limit	0.00 %	650.00 %	650.00 %
731	Torque Limit Generator Operation	0.00 %	650.00 %	650.00 %
732	P-Comp. Torque Upper Limit	0.00 %	650.00 %	100.00 %
733	P-Comp. Torque Lower Limit	0.00 %	650.00 %	100.00 %
739	Power Limit	0.00 kW	$2 \cdot o \cdot P_{FIN}$	$2 \cdot o \cdot P_{FIN}$
740	Power Limit Generator Operation	0.00 kW	$2 \cdot o \cdot P_{FIN}$	$2 \cdot o \cdot P_{FIN}$


Anticlockwise operation
Clockwise operation
M
Torque Limit Generator Operation 731
Torque Limit 730
generator
motor
motor
generator
n
Torque Limit 730
Torque Limit Generator Operation 731
Speed is limited by Maximum Frequency 419

16.5.3.2 Limit Value Sources

As an alternative to limiting the output values by a fixed value, linking to an analog input value is also possible. The analog value is limited via parameters *Minimum Reference Percentage* **518** and *Maximum Reference Percentage* **519**, but does not consider the *Gradient Percentage Ramp* **477** of the reference percentage value channel.
The assignment is done with the help of the parameters *Isq Limit Source Motor Operation* **734** and *Isq Limit Source Generator Op.* **735** for the torque-forming current component Isq.
The sources for torque limits are selectable via parameters *Torque Limit Source Motor Op* **736** and *Torque Limit Source Gen. Op.***737**

Operation mode 736, 737	Function
101 - Analog Input MFI1A	The source is the multifunctional input 1 in an analog *Operation Mode* **452**.
105 - Rep. Frequency Input (F3)	The frequency signal on the repetition frequency input corresponding to *Operation Mode* **496**.
110 - Fixed Limit	The selected parameter values for limiting the speed controller are taken into account.

Note: The limit values and assignment to different limit value sources are data set related in the configurations. The use of the data set change-over demands an examination of the parameters in question.

16.5.4 Acceleration Pre-Control

The acceleration pre-control is active in the speed-controlled configurations and can be activated via parameter *Operation Mode* **725** for acceleration pre-control.

Operation Mode 725	Function
0 - Off	The control system is not influenced.
1 - Switched on	The acceleration pre-control is active according to the limit values.

The acceleration pre-control controlled parallel to the speed controller reduces the reaction time of the drive system to a change of reference values. The minimum acceleration time defines the modification speed of the reference speed value as from which a torque necessary for acceleration of the drive is pre-controlled. The acceleration of the mass is a function of the *Mech. Time Constant* **727** of the system. The value calculated from the increase of the reference value and the multiplication factor of the torque required is added to the output signal of the speed controller.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
726	Minimum Acceleration	0.1 Hz/s	6500.0 Hz/s	1.0 Hz/s
727	Mech. Time Constant	1 ms	60000 ms	10 ms

For optimal setting, the acceleration pre-control is switched on and the mechanical time constant is set to the minimum value. The output value of the speed controller is compared to the minimum acceleration time during the acceleration processes. The frequency ramp is to be set to the highest value occurring in operation at which the output value of the speed controller is not yet limited. Now, the value of the *Minimum Acceleration* **726** is set to half the set acceleration ramp so that it is ensured that the acceleration pre-control is active. The acceleration pre-control is not raised by increasing the *Mech. Time Constant* **727** until the output values corresponds to the time modification of the drive during the acceleration processes.

16.5.5 Field Controller

The flux-forming current component is controlled by the field controller. The guided commissioning optimizes the parameters of the field controller by measuring the time constant and magnetizing curve of the connected 3-phase machine. The parameters of the field controller are selected such that they can be used without changes in most applications. The proportional and the integrating part of the field controller are to be set via parameters *Amplification* **741** and *Integral Time* **742**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
717	Reference Flux	0.01 %	300.00 %	100.00 %
741	Amplification	0.0	100.0	5.0
742	Integral Time	0.0 ms	1000.0 ms	100.0 ms

Optimization of the controller parameters of the field parameter should be done in the basic speed range. The frequency to be set should be slightly lower than the limit of the modulation controller selected via parameter *Reference Modulation* **750** so that the modulation controller is not active. Optimization of the *Reference Flux* **717** is only required in exceptional cases. The set percentage value changes the flux-forming current component proportionally to the torque-forming current component. The correction of the rated magnetizing current by means of the reference flux thus changes the torque of the drive. If the parameter *Reference Flux* **717** is decreased drastically (change-over from 100% to 50%), the parameter I_{sd} can be oscillographed. The course of the signal of the flux-forming current I_{sd} should reach the stationary value after overshooting without oscillation. The integral time of the field controller should be selected according to the half rotor time constant calculated by the software. The actual value to be read out via parameter *Act. Rotor Time Constant* **227** divided by two is to be used in the first approach for the parameter *Integral Time Field Controller* **742**. If a quick transition into field weakening is necessary for the application, the integral time should be reduced. The amplification is to be selected relatively large in order to achieve a good dynamics of the controller. Attention should be paid to the fact that an increased overshoot is necessary for a good control behavior in controlling of a load with low-pass behavior, for example a 3-phase machine.

16.5.5.1 Limitation of field controller

The output signal of the field controller, the integrating and proportional components are limited via parameter *Ref. Isd Upper Limit* **743** and parameter *Ref. Isd Lower Limit* **744**. The guided commissioning has set the parameter *Ref. Isd Upper Limit* **743** according to the parameter *Rated Current* **371**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
743	Ref. Isd Upper Limit	0.1·I_{FIN}	o · I_{FIN}	I_{FIN}
744	Ref. Isd Lower Limit	- I_{FIN}	I_{FIN}	0.0

The limits of the field controller define not only the maximum current occurring, but also the dynamic properties of the controller. The upper and lower limits restrict the modification speed of the machine flux and the torque resulting from it. In particular the speed area above the nominal frequency should be observed for the modification of the flux-forming component. The upper limit is to be estimated from the product of the set magnetizing current and the correction factor *Reference Flux* **717**, although the limit must not exceed the overload current of the drive.

16.5.6 Modulation Controller

The modulation controller, which is designed as an I regulator, automatically adapts the output value of the frequency inverter to the machine behavior in the basic speed area and in the field weakening area. If the modulation exceeds the value set with parameter *Reference Modulation* **750**, the field-forming current component and thus the flux in the machine are reduced.

In order to make the best possible use of the voltage available, the figure selected via parameter *Operation mode* **753** is put into proportion to the DC link voltage. That means that with a high mains voltage there is also a high output voltage available, the drive only reaches the field weakening area later and produces a higher torque.

Operation mode **753**	Function
0 - Usq-Control	The modulation is calculated from the ratio of torque-forming voltage component U_{sq} to the DC link voltage.
1 - V-Absolute Value Control	The modulation is calculated from the absolute voltage value to the DC link voltage ratio.

The integrating part of the modulation controller is to be set via parameter *Integral Time* **752**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
750	Reference Modulation	3.00 %	105.00 %	102.00 %
752	Integral Time	0.0 ms	1000.0 ms	10.0 ms

The percentage setting of the *Reference Modulation* **750** is basically depending on the leakage inductivity of the machine. The default value was selected such that in most cases the remaining deviation of 5% is sufficient as a reserve range for the current controller. For the optimization of the controller parameters, the drive is accelerated with a flat ramp into the area of field weakening, so that the modulation controller intervenes. The limit is set via parameter *Reference Modulation* **750**. Then, the control loop can be excited with a unit step function by modifying the reference modulation (change-over between 95% and 50%). By means of an oscillographed measurement of the flux-forming current component on the analog output of the frequency inverter, the controlling process of the modulation controller can be assessed. The course of the signal of the flux-forming current I_{sd} should reach the stationary value after overshooting without oscillation. An oscillating of the course of the current can be damped by increasing the integral time. The parameter *Integral Time* **752** should roughly correspond to the actual value *Act. Rotor Time Constant* **227**.

16.5.6.1 Limitation of Modulation Controller

The output signal of the modulation controller is the internal reference flux. The controller output and the integrating part are limited via the parameter *Reference Imr Lower Limit* **755** and the product of *Rated Magnetizing Current* **716** with *Reference Flux* **717**. The magnetizing current parameter forming the upper limit is to be set to the rated value of the machine. For the lower limit, select a value which also builds up an adequate flux in the machine in the field weakening area. The limitation of the control deviation at the output of the modulation controller prevents a possible oscillation of the control loop in the case of load surges. The parameter *Control Deviation Limitation* **756** is stated as an absolute value and acts both as a positive and a negative limit.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
755	Reference Imr Lower Limit	$0.01 \cdot I_{FIN}$	$o \cdot I_{FIN}$	$0.01 \cdot I_{FIN}$
756	Control Deviation Limitation	0.00 %	100.00 %	10.00 %

17 Special Functions

The configurable functions of the corresponding control methods enable another field of application of the frequency inverters. The integration in the application is made easier by special functions.

17.1 Pulse Width Modulation

The motor noises can be reduced by changing over the parameter *Switching Frequency* **400**. The maximum reduction of the switching frequency should not exceed a ratio of 1:10 to the frequency of the output signal for a sine-shaped output signal. The maximum possible switching frequency depends on the drive output and the ambient conditions. For the required technical data refer to the corresponding table and the device type diagrams.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
400	Switching frequency	2 kHz	16 kHz	2 kHz [1] 4 kHz [2]

The factory setting of parameter *Switching frequency* **400** depends on the setting of parameter *Configuration* **30**:

[1] configurations 1xx

[2] configurations 2xx / 4xx/ 5xx

The heat losses increase proportionally to the load point of the frequency inverter and the switching frequency. The automatic reduction adjusts the switching frequency to the current operating state of the frequency inverter in order to provide the output performance required for the drive task at the greatest possible dynamics and a low noise level.

The switching frequency is adjusted between the limits which can be set via parameters *Switching frequency* **400** and *Min. Switching Frequency* **401**. If the *Min. Switching Frequency* **401** is larger than or equal to the *Switching Frequency* **400**, the automatic reduction is deactivated.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
401	Min. Switching Frequency	2 kHz	16 kHz	2 kHz

The change of the switching frequency depends on the heat sink temperature switch-off limit and the output current.

The temperature limit to be exceeded so that the switching frequency is reduced can be set via parameter *Reduction Limit Heat Sink Temp.* **580**. If the heat sink temperature falls below the threshold set via parameter *Reduction Limit Heat Sink Temp.* **580** by 5 °C, the switching frequency is increased again step by step.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
580	Reduction Limit Heat Sink Temp.	-25 °C	0 °C	-4 °C

Note: The limit for the switching frequency reduction is influenced by the intelligent current limits depending on the selected *Operation Mode* **573** and the output current. If they have been switched off or provide the full overload current, the switching frequency is reduced when the output current exceeds the limit of 87.5% of the long-term overload current (60s). The switching frequency is increased if the output current drops below the reference current of the next highest switching frequency.

17.2 Fan

The switch-on temperature of the heat sink fan can be set with the parameter *Switch-on temperature* **39**.

If mains voltage is applied to the frequency inverter, and the heat sink temperature exceeds the set temperature, the heat sink fan is switched on. Independent from parameter *Switch-on temperature* **39**, the heat sink fan will be switched on, as soon as the frequency inverter is switched on and enabled and the start signal is received.

If the heat sink temperature drops below the set temperature by 5 °C, or if the controller enable signal is inhibited, the heat sink fan is switched off when the minimum ON-time has elapsed.

The minimum ON-time of the heat sink fan is set internally to 1 minute. When the temperature drops below the *Switch-on temperature* **39** during this time since starting, the fan will continue to operate until the running ON-time is reached.

Operation mode 43 for digital outputs additionally enables the control of an **external** fan. Via the digital output, the fan is switched on if the controller is released and Start clockwise or Start anticlockwise are switched on, or if the *Switch-on temperature* **39** for the internal fan was reached.
Like in the case of the internal heat sink fan, the minimum ON-time of the external fan is 1 minute.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
39	Switch-On Temperature	0 °C	60 °C	0 °C

17.3 Bus controller

Note: In order to be able to control the drive, the digital controller input S1IND must be connected and set to "High-Signal" in order to enable the output stage.

Warning!
- Switch off power supply before connecting and disconnecting control terminal S1IND.
- The unit may only be connected with the power supply switched off.
- Make sure that the frequency inverter is discharged.
- When the frequency inverter is disconnected from power supply, the mains, DC-link voltage and motor terminals may still be live for some time. Wait for some minutes until the DC link capacitors have discharged before starting to work at the unit.

The frequency inverters can be extended by different options for data communication and can be integrate in an automation and control system in this way. Parameterization and commissioning can be done via the optional communication card, the operating unit or the interface adapter. The parameter *Local/Remote* **412** defines the operating behavior and enables a change between the control via contacts or the control unit and/or the interface.

Local/Remote **412**	Function
0 - Control via Contacts	The Start and Stop commands as well as the direction of rotation are controlled via digital signals.
1 - Control via Statemachine	The Start and Stop commands as well as the direction of rotation are controlled via the DRIVECOM State machine of the communication interface.
2 - Control via remote contacts	The Start and Stop commands as well as the direction of rotation are controlled via logic signals through the communication protocol.
3 - Control via Keypad, direction of rot. via contacts	The Start and Stop commands are controlled from the control unit and the direction of rotation is controlled via digital signals.
4 - Cont. via KP or Cont., direction of rot. via cont.	The Start and Stop commands are controlled from the control unit or via digital signals. The direction of rotation is controlled via digital signals only.
5 - Ctrl. 3-Wire, direction Cont.	3-wire; control of direction of rotation and signal *3-Wire Control* **87** via contacts.
13 - Control via KP, direction of rot. via KP	The Start and Stop commands as well as the direction of rotation are controlled via the control unit.
14 - Control via KP + cont., direction of rot. via contact	The Start and Stop commands are controlled from the control unit or via digital signals. The direction of rotation is controlled via the control unit only.
20 - Control via contacts, clockwise rot. only	The Start and Stop commands are controlled via digital signals. Fixed direction of rotation, clockwise rotation only.
23 - Control via keypad, clockwise rot. only	The start and stop commands are controlled via keypad. Fixed direction of rotation, clockwise rotation only.
24 - Control via cont. +KP, clockwise rot. only	The Start and Stop commands are controlled from the control unit or via digital signals. Fixed direction of rotation, clockwise rotation only.
30 to 34	Operation mode 20 to 24, anticlockwise direction of rotation only.
43 - Control via KP, direction of rot. via contact + KP	The start and stop commands are controlled via digital signals. The direction of rotation is controlled from the control unit or via digital signals.
44 - Control via cont.+ KP, direction of rot. via cont. + KP	Both the Start and Stop commands as well as the sense of rotation can be controlled from either the control unit or via digital signals.
46 - Ctrl. 3-Wire + KP, Dir. Cont. + KP	3-wire and control unit; control of direction of rotation and signal *3-Wire Control* **87** via contacts or control unit.

17.4 Brake Chopper and Brake Resistance

The frequency inverters feature a brake chopper transistor. The external brake resistor is connected to terminals Rb1 and Rb2. The parameter *Trigger Threshold* **506** defines the switch-on threshold of the brake chopper. The generator output of the drive, which leads to the increase in the DC link voltage, is converted to heat by the external brake resistor above the limit set via parameter *Trigger Threshold* **506**.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
506	Trigger Threshold	U_{dmin}+25V	1000.0 V	U_{dBC}

Default settings of parameter *Trigger Threshold* **506**:

- 385 V for ACT series of devices ACT 201
- 770 V for ACT series of devices ACT 401

The parameter *Trigger Threshold* **506** is to be set in such a way that it is between the maximum DC link voltage which the mains can generate and the maximum admissible DC link voltage of the frequency inverter.

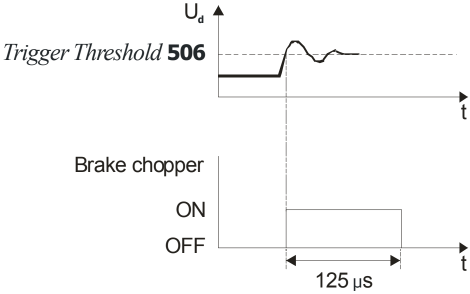
$$U_{Netz} \cdot 1.1 \cdot \sqrt{2} < Ud_{BC} < Ud_{max}$$

If the parameter *Trigger Threshold* **506** is set larger than the maximum admissible DC link voltage, the brake chopper cannot become active, the brake chopper is switched off.

If the parameter *Trigger Threshold* **506** is set to a value below the DC link voltage generated by the mains, error message F0705 (chapter "Error Messages") is displayed if the start command is issued to the frequency inverter.

If the DC link voltage exceeds the maximum values of 400 V for the ACT 201 series of devices and 800 V for the ACT 401 series of devices, respectively, error message F0700 is displayed (chapter "Error Messages").

The sampling period of the function is 125 µs.
After exceeding the trigger threshold the brake chopper remains in switched-on condition for at least 125 µs, even if the DC link voltage will fall below the trigger threshold in this time.



17.4.1 Dimensioning of Brake Resistor

The following values must be known for dimensioning:

- Peak braking power $P_{b\ Peak}$ in W
- Resistance Rb in Ω
- Duty cycle DC in %

- **Calculation of peak braking power $P_{b\ Peak}$**

$$P_{b\ Peak} = \frac{J \cdot \left(n_1^2 - n_2^2\right)}{182 \cdot t_b}$$

$P_{b\ Peak}$ = Peak braking power in W
J = Moment of inertia of drive system kgm^2
n_1 = Speed of drive system before the braking operation in min^{-1}
n_2 = Speed of drive system after the braking operation in min^{-1}
t_b = Braking time in s

- **Calculation of resistance R_b**

$$R_b = \frac{U_{d\ BC}^{\ 2}}{P_{b\ Peak}}$$

R_b = Resistance in Ω
$U_{d\ BC}$ = Switch-on threshold in V
$P_{b\ Peak}$ = Peak braking power in W

The switch-on threshold $U_{d\ BC}$ is the DC link voltage at which the brake resistor is switched on. The switch-on threshold can be set, as described above, via parameter *Trigger Threshold* **506**.

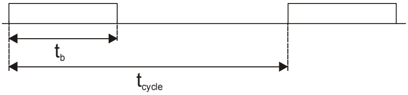
Caution! The resistance of the brake resistor must not be less than the minimum value $R_{b\ min}$ -10%. The values for $R_{b\ min}$ are listed in chapter "Technical Data".

If the calculated resistance R_b of the brake resistor is between two standard series values, the lower resistance is to be selected.

- **Calculation of duty cycle DC**

$$DC = \frac{t_b}{t_{cycle}}$$

DC = Duty cycle
t_b = Braking time
t_{cycle} = Cycle time



Example:
t_b = 48 s, t_{cycle} = 120 s

$$DC = \frac{t_b}{t_{cycle}} = 0.4 = 40\%$$

In the case of infrequent short braking operations, typical values of the duty cycle DC are at 10 %, for long braking operations (≥ 120 s) typical values are at 100%. In the case of frequent deceleration and acceleration operations, it is recommended that the duty cycle DC be calculated according to the above formula.

The calculated values for $P_{b\ Peak}$, R_b and DC can be used by the resistor manufacturers for determining the resistor-specific permanent power.

Warning! The brake resistor is to be connected according to the specifications and instructions in chapter "Connection of a Brake Resistor".

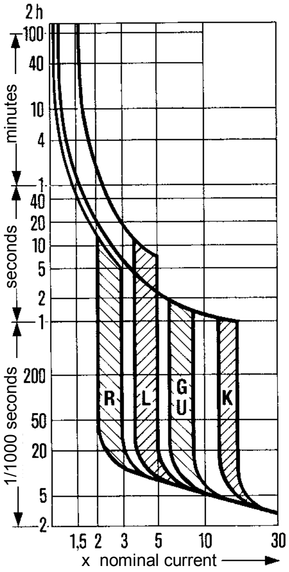
17.5 Motor Circuit Breaker

Motor circuit breakers are used for protecting a motor and its supply cable against overheating by overload. Depending on the overload level, they disconnect the motor from mains supply immediately in the case of a short-circuit or they disconnect the motor if an overload has occurred for some time.

Conventional motor circuit breakers are commercially available for various applications with different trigger characteristics (L, G/U, R and K), as shown in the diagram on the right. As frequency inverters in most cases are used for supplying motors which are classified as operating equipment with very high starting currents, exclusively the K characteristic was realized in this function.

Unlike the operation of a conventional motor Protection switch which disconnects the equipment to be protected immediately if the trigger threshold is reached, this function provides the possibility of issuing a warning instead of disconnecting the equipment immediately.

The rated current of the motor protection switch refers to the rated motor current stated via parameter *Rated Current* **371** of the corresponding data set.
The rated values of the frequency inverter are to be considered accordingly when it comes to dimensioning the application.



The function of the motor circuit breaker can be linked to different data sets. In this way, it is possible to operate different motors via one frequency inverter. Thus, each motor can be equipped with its own motor protection switch.
In case a motor is operated via the frequency inverter for which some setting values, e.g. minimum and maximum frequency, are changed via the data set switch-over, only one motor circuit breaker may be installed. This functionality can be differentiated by selecting the parameter *Operation Mode* **571** for single motor operation or multiple motor operation.

Operation Mode **571**	Function
0 - Off	The function is deactivated
1 - K-Char.,Mul.Motor Op.,Err.Sw.Off	In each of the four data sets, the rated values are monitored. Overloading the drive is prevented by the fault switch-off "F0401".
2 - K-Char.,Sing.Motor,Err.Sw.-Off	The rated values in the first data set are used independently of the active data set. Overloading the drive is prevented by the fault switch-off "F0401".
11 - K-Char.,Multi-Motor Op.,Warning	In each of the four data sets, the rated values are monitored. Overloading the drive mechanism is signaled by a warning message "A0200".
22 - K-Char.,Single-Motor,Warning	The rated values in the first data set are used independently of the active data set. Overloading the drive mechanism is signaled by a warning message "A0200".

Multiple motor operation

Parameter *Operation Mode* **571 = 1** or **11**

In multiple motor operation, it is assumed that for each data set a corresponding motor is used. For this, one motor and one motor protection switch are assigned to each data set. In this operation mode, the rated values of the active data set are monitored. The current output current of the frequency inverter is only taken into account if the motor protection switch is activated by the data set. In the motor protection switch of the other data sets, zero current is expected, with the result that the thermal decay functions are taken into account. In combination with the data set change-over, the function of the motor protection switches is similar to that of motors connected alternately to the mains with their own protection switches.

Single motor operation

Parameter *Operation Mode* **571 = 2** or **22**

In single motor operation, only one motor protection witch, which monitors the output current of the frequency inverter, is active. In the case of a data set change-over, only the switch-off limits derived from the rated machine parameters are changed over. Accumulated thermal values are used after the change-over as well. In the case of the data set change-over, please ensure that the machine data are stated identically for all data sets. In combination with the data set change-over, the function of the motor protection switch is similar to that of motors connected alternately to the mains with one common protection switch.

Motor protection, in particular self-ventilation motors, is improved via the *Frequency Limit* **572** which can be set as a percentage of the rated frequency. The measured output current in operating points below the frequency limit is assessed by a factor of 2 higher in the calculation of the trigger characteristic.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
572	Frequency Limit	0 %	300 %	0 %

17.6 V-belt Monitoring

Continuous monitoring of the load behavior and thus of the connection between the 3-phase machine and the load is the task of the V-belt monitoring system. The parameter *Operation Mode* **581** defines the function behavior if the *Active Current* **214** (sensor-less control) or the torque-forming current component *Isq* **216** (field-oriented control method) is below the set *Trigger Limit Iactive* **582** for longer than the parameterized *Delay Time* **583**.

Operation mode **581**	**Function**
0 - Off	The function is deactivated.
1 - Warning	If the active current drops below the threshold value, the warning "A8000" is displayed.
2 - Error	The unloaded drive is switched off and fault message "F0402" is displayed.

The error and warning messages can be read out by means of the digital outputs or reported to an overriding control system. The *Trigger Limit Iactive* **582** is to be parameterized as a percentage of the *Rated Current* **371** for the application and the possible operating points.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
582	Trigger Limit Iactive	0.1%	100.0 %	10.0 %
583	Delay Time	0.1 s	600.0 s	10.0 s

17.7 Functions of Field-Orientated Control

The field-orientated control modes are based on a cascade control and the calculation of a complex machine model. The various control functions can be supplemented by special functions specific to the application.

17.7.1 Motor Chopper

The field-orientated control modes contain the function for adapted implementation of the generator energy into heat in the connected three-phase machine. This enables the realization of dynamic speed changes at minimum system costs. The torque and speed behavior of the drive system is not influenced by the parameterized braking behavior. The parameter *Trigger Threshold* **507** of the DC link voltage defines the switch-on threshold of the motor chopper function.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
507	Trigger Threshold	U_{dmin}+25V	1000.0	U_{dMC}

The parameter *Trigger Threshold* **507** is to be set in such a way that it is between the maximum DC link voltage which the mains can generate and the maximum admissible DC link voltage of the frequency inverter.

$$U_{Mains} \cdot 1.1 \cdot \sqrt{2} < U_{dMC} < Ud_{max}$$

If the parameter *Trigger Threshold* **507** is set larger than the maximum admissible DC link voltage, the motor chopper cannot become active, the motor chopper is switched off.

If the set *Trigger Threshold* **507** is smaller than the maximum DC link voltage the mains can generate, error message F0706 (chapter "Error Messages") is displayed when the frequency inverter is switched on.

17.7.2 Temperature Adjustment

The field-orientated control modes are based on the most precise calculation of the machine model possible. The rotor time constant is an important machine variable for the calculation. The value to be read out via the parameter *Act. Rotor Time Constant* **227** is calculated from the inductivity of the rotor circuit and the rotor resistance. The dependence of the rotor time constant on the motor temperature can be taken into account in the case of particularly high precision requirements via a suitable measurement. Via *Operation Mode* **465** for the temperature adjustment, you can select different methods and actual value sources for temperature measurement.

Operation mode **465**	**Function**
0 - Off	The function is deactivated.
1 - Temp. Meas. on MFI1A	Temperature synchronization (0 ... 200 °C => 0 ... 10 V / 0 ... 20 mA), actual temperature value at multifunctional input 1.
4 - Temp. Meas. at Start	Determination of temperature by frequency inverter via measurement of the winding resistance without external temperature measurement.

Operation mode 1 requires an external temperature measurement system which evaluates the temperature sensor and maps the temperature range from 0...200 °C to an analog voltage or current signal. The *Operation Mode* **452** of multifunction input MFI1 must be selected accordingly.
Operation mode 4 is available in configurations 210 and 230. When the signals Controller release and Start clockwise or Start anticlockwise are present, the motor temperature and the rotor time constant are synchronized by means of the measured winding resistance.

The material used for the rotor winding of the motor is taken into account via the parameter *Temperature Coefficient* **466**. This value defines the change of the rotor resistance as a function of the temperature for a certain material of the rotor winding. Typical temperature coefficients are 39%/100 °C for copper and 36%/100 °C for aluminum at a temperature of 20°C.
The temperature characteristic within the software is calculated via the aforementioned temperature coefficient and the parameter *Temperature Adjustment* **467**. The adjustment temperature enables an additional optimization of the rotor time constant alongside the parameter *Rated Slip Correction Factor* **718**.

Parameter		**Settings**		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
466	Temperature Coefficient	0.00%/100 °C	300.00%/100 °C	39.00%/100 °C
467	Adjusting Temperature	-50 °C	300 °C	35 °C

The synchronization of the rotor time constant as a function of the winding temperature can be adjusted. The default values should normally be sufficiently precise so that neither an adjustment of the rotor time constants via the parameter *Rated Slip Correction Factor* **718** nor an adjustment of the temperature synchronization via the parameter *Temperature Coefficient* **466** is necessary. If an adjustment is necessary, please remember that the rotor time constant is calculated by the guided commissioning via the machine data. The *Adjusting Temperature* **467** is to be set to the temperature at which the optimization of the extended machine data was carried out. The temperature can be read out via the actual value parameter *Winding Temperature* **226** and can be used in the optimization for the parameter.

17.7.3 Encoder Monitoring

Failures of the speed sensor lead to a faulty behavior of the drive, as the measured speed forms the foundation of the control mode. By default, the speed sensor monitoring system continuously monitors the speed sensor signal, the track signal and the division marks. If, while the frequency inverter is released, a faulty signal is recognized for longer than the timeout, a fault switch-off is effected. If the parameter *Operation Mode* **760** is set to zero, the monitoring function is deactivated.

Operation Mode **760**	Function
0 - Off	The function is deactivated.
2 - Error	A fault message is displayed according to the timeouts set.

The speed sensor monitoring is to be parameterized in the sub functions according to the application. The monitoring function becomes active with the release of the frequency inverter and the start command. The timeout defines a monitoring time in which the condition for the fault switch-off must be fulfilled without interruption. If one of the timeouts is set to zero, this monitoring function is deactivated.

Parameter		Settings		
No.	**Description**	**Min.**	**Max.**	**Fact. sett.**
761	Timeout: Signal Fault	0 ms	65000 ms	1000 ms
762	Timeout: Channel fault	0 ms	65000 ms	1000 ms
763	Timeout: Direction fault	0 ms	65000 ms	1000 ms

Timeout: Signal Fault
The actual speed measured is compared with the output value of the speed controller. If the actual speed value is exactly zero for the time selected with the parameter *Timeout: Signal fault* **761**, although a reference value is available, the fault is displayed with the message "F1430".

Timeout: Channel fault
The actual speed measurement monitors the sequence in time of the signals in the quadruple evaluation of the speed sensor operation mode. If the speed sensor signal is faulty for the time selected with the parameter *Timeout: Channel fault* **762,** the fault is displayed with the message "F1431".

Timeout: Direction fault
The actual speed measured is compared with the reference speed. If the sign between reference value and actual value differs for the time selected with the parameter *Timeout: Direction fault* **763**, the fault is displayed with the message "F1432". The monitoring function is reset when the drive mechanism has moved in the reference value direction by a quarter of a revolution.

18 Actual Values

The various control functions and methods include electrical control variables and various calculated actual values of the machine or system. The different actual values can be read out for operational and error diagnosis via a communication interface or in the VAL menu branch of the operating unit.

18.1 Actual Values of the Frequency Inverter

The modular hardware of the frequency inverter enables application-specific adaptation. Further actual value parameters can be displayed as a function of the selected configuration and the installed expansion cards.

Actual Values of the Frequency Inverter

No.	Description	Function
222	DC link voltage	Direct voltage in the DC link.
223	Modulation	Output voltage of the frequency inverter relative to the mains voltage (100% = U_{FIN}).
228	Internal Reference Frequency	Sum of the Reference Frequency Sources **475** as a reference value from the frequency reference value channel.
229	Reference Percentage Value	Sum of the *Reference Percentage Sources* **476** as a reference value from the reference percentage channel.
230	Actual Percentage Value	Actual value signal on the *Actual Percentage Source* **478**.
244	Working Hours Counter	Operating hours in which the output stage of the inverter is active.
245	Operation Hours Counter	Operating hours of the frequency inverter in which supply voltage is available.
249	Active data set	The data set actively in use according to *Data Set Change-Over 1* **70** and *Data Set Change-Over 2* **71**.
250	Digital Inputs	Decimally coded status of the six digital inputs and of multifunctional input 1 in *Operation Mode* **452** - digital input.
251	Analog Input MFI1A	Input signal on multifunctional input 1 in *Operation Mode* **452** - analog input.
252	Repetition frequency input	Signal on repetition frequency input according to *Operation Mode* **496**.
254	Digital Outputs	Decimally coded status of the two digital outputs and of multifunctional output 1 in *Operation Mode* **550** – digital.
255	Heat Sink Temperature	Measured heat sink temperature.
256	Inside Temperature	Measured inside temperature.
257	Analog Output MFO1A	Output signal on multifunctional output 1 in *Operation Mode* **550** – analog.
259	Current Error	Error message with error code and abbreviation.
269	Warnings	Warning message with error code and abbreviation.
275	Controller Status	The reference value signal is limited by the controller coded in the controller status.
278	Repetition frequency output MFO1F	Output signal on multifunctional input 1 in *Operation Mode* **550** – repetition frequency.

Note: The actual values can be read out and monitored in the VAL menu branch of the operating unit. The parameter *Control Level* **28** in the PARA menu branch defines the selection of the actual value parameters.

18.2 Actual Values of the Machine

The frequency inverter controls the behavior of the machine in the various operating points. As a function of the configuration selected and the expansion cards installed, control variables and further actual value parameters of the machine can be displayed.

Actual Values of the Machine		
No.	**Description**	**Function**
210	Stator Frequency	The output frequency (motor frequency) of the frequency inverter.
211	R.m.s Current	Calculated effective output current (motor current) of the frequency inverter.
212	Output Voltage	Calculated R.m.s. figure of the phase-to-phase voltage (motor voltage) of the frequency inverter
213	Active Power	Active power calculated from the voltage, the current and the control variables.
214	Active Current	Active current calculated from the rated motor parameters, the control variables and the current
215	Isd	Current component of the field-orientated control forming the magnetic flux.
216	Isq	Torque-forming current component of field-orientated control.
217	Encoder 1 Frequency	Calculated from the data on encoder 1, the *No. of Pole Pairs* **373** and the encoder signal.
218	Encoder 1 Speed	Calculation from encoder 1 frequency.
221	Slip Frequency	Difference from the synchronous frequency calculated from the rated motor parameters, the control variables and the current.
224	Torque	Torque at the current output frequency calculated from the voltage, the current and the control variables.
225	Rotor Flux	Current magnetic flux relative to the rated motor parameters.
226	Winding Temperature	Measured temperature of the motor winding according to O*peration Mode* **465** for temperature adjustment.
227	Act. Rotor Time Constant	Time constant calculated for the operating point of the machine from the rated motor parameters, the rated and control variables.
235	Flux-Forming Voltage	Voltage component of the field-orientated control forming the magnetic flux.
236	Torque-Forming Voltage	Voltage component of the field-orientated control forming the torque.
238	Flux Value	Magnetic flux calculated according to the rated values and the operating point of the motor.
239	Reactive Current	Reactive current calculated from the rated motor parameters, the control variables and the current
240	Actual Speed	Measured and/or calculated speed of drive.
241	Actual Frequency	Measured and/or calculated frequency of drive.

Note: The actual values can be read out and monitored in the VAL menu branch of the operating unit. The parameter *Control Level* **28** in the PARA menu branch defines the selection of the actual value parameters to be selected.

18.3 Actual Value Memory

The assessment of the operating behavior and the maintenance of the frequency inverter in the application is facilitated by storing various actual values. The actual value memory guarantees monitoring of the individual variables for a definable period. The parameters of the actual value memory can be read out via a communication interface and displayed via the operating unit. In addition, the operating unit provides monitoring of the peak and mean values in the VAL menu branch.

Actual value memory		
No.	**Description**	**Function**
231	Peak Value Long Term Ixt	Utilization of the device-dependent overload of 60 seconds.
232	Peak Value, Short Term Ixt	Utilization of the device-dependent overload of 1 second.
287	Peak Value Vdc	The maximum DC link voltage measured.
288	Average Value Vdc	The average DC link voltage calculated in the period of observation.
289	Peak Value Heat Sink Temp.	The highest measured heat sink temperature of the frequency inverter.
290	Average Value Heat Sink Temp.	The average heat sink temperature calculated in the period of observation.
291	Peak Value Inside Temperature	The maximum measured inside temperature in the frequency inverter.
292	Average Value Inside Temperature	The average inside temperature calculated in the period of observation.
293	Peak value Irms	The highest absolute current calculated from the measured motor phases.
294	Average value Irms	The average absolute current calculated in the period of observation.
295	Peak Value Active Power pos.	The largest calculated active power in motor operation.
296	Peak Value Active Power neg.	Maximum generator active power calculated from the voltage, the current and the control variables.
297	Average Value Active Power	The average active power calculated in the period of observation.
301	Energy, positive	The calculated energy to the motor in motor operation.
302	Energy, negative	The calculated energy from the motor in generator operation.

Note: The actual values can be read out and monitored in the VAL menu branch of the operating unit. The parameter *Control Level* **28** in the PARA menu branch defines the selection of the actual value parameters to be selected.

The *Reset Memory* **237** parameter to be selected in the PARA menu branch of the operating unit enables purposeful resetting of the individual average and peak values. The peak value and the average value with the values stored in the period are overwritten with the parameter value zero.

Operation mode		Function
0 -	No deleting	Values of actual value memory remain unchanged.
1 -	Peak Value Long Term Ixt	Reset *Peak Value Long-Term Ixt* **231**.
2 -	Peak Value Short Term Ixt	Reset *Peak Value Short-Term Ixt* **232**.
3 -	Peak Value Vdc	Reset *Peak Value Vdc* **287**.
4 -	Average Value Vdc	Delete *Average Value Vdc.* **288**.
5 -	Peak Value Tc	Reset *Peak Value Heat Sink Temp.* **289**.
6 -	Average Value Tc	Delete *Average Value Heat Sink Temp.* **290**.
7 -	Peak Value Ti	Reset *Peak Value Inside Temperature* **291**.
8 -	Average Value Ti	Delete *Average Value Inside Temperature* **292**.
9 -	Peak value Irms	Reset *Peak Value Irms* **293**.
10 -	Average value Irms	Delete *Average Value Irms* **294**.
11 -	Peak Value Pactive pos.	Reset *Peak Value Active Power pos.* **295**.
12 -	Peak Value Pactive neg.	Reset *Peak Value Active Power neg.* **296**.
13 -	Average Value Pactive	Delete *Average Value Active Power* **297**.
16 -	Energy, positive	Reset parameter *Energy, positive* **301**.
17 -	Energy, negative	Reset parameter *Energy, negative* **302**.
100 -	All Peak Values	Reset all peak values stored.
101 -	All Average Values	Delete average values and stored values.
102 -	All Values	Delete the entire actual value memory.

18.4 Actual Values of the System

The calculation of the actual values of the system is based on the parameterized system data. Specific to the application, the parameters are calculated from the factors, electrical variables and the controls. The correct display of the actual values is a function of the data of the system to be parameterized.

18.4.1 Actual Value System

The drive can be monitored via the actual value *Actual Value System* **242**.
The *Actual Frequency* **241** to be monitored is multiplied by the Factor *Actual Value System* **389** and can be read out via the parameter *Actual Value System* **242**, i.e. *Actual Frequency* **241** x Factor *Actual Value System* **389** = *Actual Value System* **242**.

Actual Value System		
No.	**Description**	**Function**
242	Actual Value System	Calculated frequency of drive

18.4.2 Volume Flow and Pressure

The parameterization of the factors *Nominal Volumetric Flow* **397** and *Nominal Pressure* **398** is necessary if the matching actual values *Volumetric flow* **285** and *Pressure* **286** are used to monitor the drive. The conversion is done using the electrical control parameters. *Volume Flow* **285** and *Pressure* **286** are referred to the *Effective Current* **214** in the case of the sensor-less control methods. In the case of the field-oriented control methods, they are referred to the torque-forming current component *Isq* **216**.

Volume Flow and Pressure

No.	Description	Function
285	Volumetric Flow	Calculated volume flow with the unit m^3/h
286	Pressure	Pressure calculated according to the characteristic with the unit kPa

19 Error Protocol

The various control methods and the hardware of the frequency inverter include functions which continuously monitor the application. The operational and error diagnosis is facilitated by the information stored in the error protocol.

19.1 Error List

The last 16 fault messages are stored in chronological order and the *No. of Errors* **362** shows the number of errors which have occurred since commissioning of the frequency inverter. In the VAL menu branch of the control unit, the error code FXXXX is displayed. The meaning of the error key is described in the following chapter "Error Messages". Via the PC program, the number of operation hours (h), operation minutes (m) and the fault message can additionally be read out. The current operating hours can be read out via the *Operation Hours Counter* **245**. The fault report can be acknowledged via the keys of the operating unit and according to the assignment *Error Acknowledgment* **103**.

Error List

No.	Description	Function
310	Last Error	hhhhh:mm ; FXXXX fault message.
311	Last Error but one	hhhhh:mm ; FXXXX fault message.
312 to 325		Eerror 3 to error 16.
362	No. of errors occurred	Number of errors occurred after commissioning of the frequency inverter.

The error and warning behavior of the frequency inverter can be set in various ways. The automatic error acknowledgment enables acknowledgment of the faults Overcurrent F0500, Overcurrent F0507 and Overvoltage F0700 without intervention by an overriding control system or the user. The *No. of self acknowledged Errors* **363** shows the total number of automatic error acknowledgments.

Error List

No.	Description	Function
363	No. of acknowledgment Errors	Total number of automatic error acknowledgment with synchronization.

19.1.1 Error Messages

The error code stored following a fault comprises the error group FXX and the following code number XX.

Error Messages

Code		Meaning
F00	00	No fault has occurred.
Overload		
F01	00	Frequency inverter overloaded.
F01	02	Frequency inverter overloaded (60 s), check load behavior.
	03	Short-term overload (1 s), check motor and application parameters.
Heat Sink		
F02	00	Heat sink temperature too high, check cooling and fan.
	01	Temperature sensor defective or ambient temperature too low.

Table "Error Messages" continued on next page.

Inside		
Code		**Meaning**
F03	00	Inside temperature too high, check cooling and fan.
	01	Inside temperature too low, check electrical cabinet heating.
Motor Connection		
F04	00	Motor temperature too high or sensor defective, check connection S6IND.
	01	Motor circuit breaker tripped, check drive.
	02	V-belt monitoring reports no load on the drive.
	03	Phase failure, check motor and wiring.
Output current		
F05	00	Overloaded, check load situation and ramps.
	03	Short circuit or earth fault, check motor and wiring.
	04	Overloaded, check load situation and current value limit controller.
	05	Asymmetric motor current, check current and wiring.
	06	Motor phase current too high, check motor and wiring.
	07	Message from phase monitoring, check motor and wiring.
DC link voltage		
F07	00	DC link voltage too high, check deceleration ramps and connected brake resistor.
	01	DC link voltage too low, check mains voltage.
	02	Power failure, check mains voltage and circuit.
	03	Phase failure, check mains fuses and circuit.
	04	*Reference DC-Link Limitation* **680** too low, check mains voltage.
	05	Brake chopper *Trigger Threshold* **506** too low, check mains voltage.
	06	Motor chopper *Trigger Threshold* **507** too low, check mains voltage.
Electronics voltage		
F08	01	Electronics voltage 24 V too low, check control terminal.
	04	Electronics voltage too high, check wiring of control terminals.
Output frequency		
F11	00	Output frequency too high, check control signals and settings.
	01	Max. frequency reached by control, check deceleration ramps and connected brake resistor.
Motor Connection		
F13	00	Earth fault on output, check motor and wiring.
	01	Set *IDC-Compensation Limit* **415** reached, check motor and cabling, increase limit, if necessary.
	10	Minimum current monitoring, check motor and wiring.
Control Connection		
F14	01	Reference value on multifunctional input 1 faulty, check signal.
	07	Overcurrent on multifunctional input 1, check signal.
	30	Speed sensor signal defective, check connections S4IND and S5IND.
	31	One track of the speed sensor signal is missing, check connections.
	32	Direction of rotation of speed sensor wrong, check connections.
Optional Components		
F0A	10	Data transmission from control unit KP 500 to inverter failed. In the control unit must be stored at least 1 file.
F0B	13	The communication module was fitted to slot B without disconnection of the mains voltage, switch mains voltage off.

In addition to fault messages mentioned, there are further fault messages. However these messages are only used for internal purposes and are not listed here. If you receive fault messages which are not listed here, please contact us by phone.

19.2 Error Environment

The parameters of the error environment help troubleshooting both in the settings of the frequency inverter and also in the complete application. The error environment documents the operational behavior of the frequency inverter at the time of the last four faults.

Error Environment

No.	Description	Function
330	DC link voltage	Direct voltage in the DC link.
331	output voltage	Calculated output voltage (motor voltage) of the frequency inverter.
332	Stator Frequency	The output frequency (motor frequency) of the frequency inverter.
333	Encoder 1 Frequency	Calculated from the data on encoder 1, the *No. of Pole Pairs* **373** and the encoder signal.
335	Phase Current Ia	Measured current in motor phase U.
336	Phase Current Ib	Measured current in motor phase V.
337	Phase Current Ic	Measured current in motor phase W.
338	R.m.s Current	Calculated effective output current (motor current) of the frequency inverter.
339	Isd / Reactive Current	Current component forming the magnetic flux or the calculated reactive current.
340	Isq / Active Current	Current component forming the torque or the calculated active current.
341	Rotor Magnetizing Current	Magnetizing current relative to the rated motor parameters and the operating point.
342	Torque	Torque calculated from the voltage, the current and the control variables.
343	Analog Input MFI1A	Input signal on multifunctional input 1 in *Operation Mode* **452** - analog input.
346	Analog Output MFO1A	Output signal on multifunctional output 1 in *Operation Mode* **550** – analog.
349	Repetition Frequency Output	Signal at repetition frequency output according to *Operation Mode* **550** – repetition frequency.
350	Status of Digital Inputs	Decimally coded status of the six digital inputs and of multifunctional input 1 in *Operation Mode* **452** - digital input.
351	Status of Digital Outputs	Decimally coded status of the two digital outputs and of multifunctional output 1 in *Operation Mode* **550** – digital.
352	Time since Release	The time of the error in hours (h), minutes (m) and seconds (s) after the release signal: hhhhh:mm:ss . $^{sec}/_{10}$ $^{sec}/_{100}$ $^{sec}/_{1000}$.
353	Heat Sink Temperature	Measured heat sink temperature.
354	Inside Temperature	Measured inside temperature.
355	Controller Status	The reference value signal is limited by the controller coded in the controller status.
356	Warning Status	The warning messages coded in warning status.

Table "Error Environment" continued on next page.

Error Environment		
357	Int. Value 1	Software service parameter.
358	Int. Value 2	Software service parameter.
359	Long Value 1	Software service parameter.
360	Long Value 2	Software service parameter.

The *Checksum* **361** parameter shows whether the storage of the error environment was free of errors (OK) or incomplete (NOK).

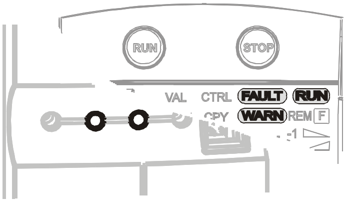
Error Environment		
No.	**Description**	**Function**
361	Checksum	Check protocol of the error environment.

20 Operational and Error Diagnosis

Operation of the frequency inverter and the connected load are monitored continuously. Various functions document the operational behavior and facilitate the operational and error diagnosis.

20.1 Status Display

The green and red light-emitting diodes give information about the operating point of the frequency inverter. If the control unit is connected, the status messages are additionally displayed by the display elements RUN, WARN and FAULT.


RUN
STOP
VAL
CTRL
FAULT
RUN
CPY
WARN
REM
F

Status Display

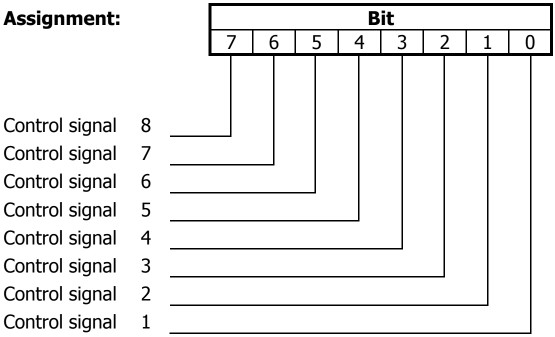
green LED	red LED	Display	Description
off	off	-	No supply voltage.
on	on	-	Initialization and self-test.
flashes	off	RUN flashes	Ready for operation, no output signal.
on	off	RUN	Operating message.
on	flashes	RUN flashes + WARN flashes	Operational message, current *Warning* **269**.
flashes	flashes	RUN flashes + WARN flashes	Ready for operation, current *Warning* **269**.
off	flashes	FAULT flashes	*Last Error* **310** of frequency inverter.
off	on	FAULT	*Last Error* **310,** acknowledge fault.

20.2 Status of Digital Signals

The status display of the digital input and output signals enables checking of the various control signals and their assignment to the corresponding software functions, in particular during commissioning.

Coding of the status of the digital signals

Assignment:


Bit
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
0
Control signal 8
Control signal 7
Control signal 6
Control signal 5
Control signal 4
Control signal 3
Control signal 2
Control signal 1

A decimal value is displayed, indicating the status of the digital signals in bits after conversion into a binary figure.

Example: Decimal figure 33 is displayed. Converted into the binary system, the number reads **OOIOOOOI**. Thus, the following contact inputs or outputs are active:

- Control signal at digital input or output 1
- Control signal at digital input or output 6

20.3 Controller Status

The controller status can be used to establish which of the control functions are active. If several controllers are active at the time, a controller code composed of the sum total of the individual codes is displayed. The display of the controller status by the control unit and the light-emitting diodes can be parameterized via the *Controller -Status Message* **409**.

Coding of the controller status

CXXXX	**ABCDE**
|	|
Controller code	Controller abbreviation

Code				Controller Status
C	00	00	-	No controller active
C	00	01	UDdyn	Voltage controller is in the rise phase according to *Operation Mode* **670**.
C	00	02	UDstop	The output frequency in the case of a mains failure is below the *Shutdown Threshold* **675**.
C	00	04	UDctr	Failure of the mains voltage and power regulation active according to *Operation Mode* **670** of the voltage controller.
C	00	08	UDlim	The DC link voltage has exceeded the *Reference DC-Link Limitation* **680**.
C	00	10	Boost	The *Dyn. Voltage Pre-Control* **605** accelerates the control behavior.
C	00	20	Ilim	The output current is limited by the current limit value controller or the speed controller.
C	00	40	Tlim	The output power or the torque are limited on the speed controller.
C	00	80	Tctr	Switch-over of field-orientated control between speed and torque-controlled control method.
C	01	00	Rstp	The *Operation Mode* **620** selected in starting behavior limits the output current.
C	02	00	IxtLtLim	Overload limit of the long-term Ixt (60s) reached, intelligent current limits active.
C	04	00	IxtStLim	Overload limit of the short-term Ixt (1s) reached, intelligent current limits active.
C	08	00	Tclim	Max. heat sink temperature TK reached, intelligent current limits of *Operation Mode* **573** active.
C	10	00	PTClim	Max. motor temperature reached, intelligent current limits of *Operation Mode* **573** active.
C	20	00	Flim	The reference frequency has reached the *Maximum Frequency* **419**. The frequency limitation is active.

Example: The controller status is displayed

C0024 UDctr Ilim

The controller status results from the hexadecimal sum of the controller codes (0004+0020 = 0024).
At the same, the power failure regulation and also the current limitation of the speed controller are active.

20.4 Warning Status

The current warning is displayed by a message in the warning status and can be used for an early message of a critical operational condition. The combination of different warnings can be set in parameter *Create Warning Mask* **536**. If a warning is present, it is displayed by the flashing red LED and WARN is displayed on the control unit. If several warnings are present, the warning status is displayed as the sum of the individual warning codes.

Coding of the warning status

AXXXX	**ABCDE**
Warning code	Abbreviation for the warning

Code		Warning Status
A 00 00	-	No warning message present.
A 00 01	Ixt	Frequency inverter overloaded (A0002 or A0004).
A 00 02	IxtSt	Overload for 60 s relative to the nominal output of the frequency inverter.
A 00 04	IxtLt	Short-time overload for 1 s relative to the nominal output of the frequency inverter.
A 00 08	Tc	Max. heat sink temperature T_K of 80 °C less the *Warning Limit Heat Sink Temp* **407** reached.
A 00 10	Ti	Max. inside temperature T_i of 65 °C less the *Warning Limit Inside Temp.* **408** reached.
A 00 20	Lim	The controller stated in *Controller Status* **275** limits the reference value.
A 00 40	INIT	Frequency inverter is initialized.
A 00 80	PTC	Warning behavior according to parameterized *Motor Temp. Operation Mode* **570** at max. motor temperature T_{Motor}.
A 01 00	Mains	*Phase Supervision* **576** reports a phase failure.
A 02 00	PMS	Motor circuit breaker parameterized in *Operation Mode* **571** tripped.
A 04 00	Flim	The *Maximum Frequency* **419** was exceeded. The frequency limitation is active.
A 08 00	A1	The input signal MFI1A is lower than 1 V / 2 mA according to the operation mode for the *Error/Warning Behavior* **453.**
A 10 00	A2	The input signal is lower than 1 V / 2 mA according to the operation mode for the *Error/Warning Behavior* **453.**
A 20 00	SYS	A Slave at the system bus signals a fault; Warning is only relevant with option EM-SYS.
A 40 00	UDC	The DC link voltage has reached the type-dependent minimum value.
A 80 00	BELT	The *Operation Mode* **581** for V-belt monitoring signals no-load operation of the application.

Example: The warning status is displayed.

A008D Ixt IxtLt Tc PTC

The warning status results from the hexadecimal sum of the warning codes (0001+0004+0008+0080 = 008D).
The short-term overload (1 s), warning limit heat sink temperature and warning limit motor temperature warnings are present.

21 Parameter List

The parameter list is structured according to the menu branches of the control unit. The parameters are listed in ascending numerical order.. A headline (shaded) can appear several times, i.e. a subject area may be listed at different places in the table. For better clarity, the parameters have been marked with pictograms:

▤ The parameter is available in the four data sets.

☑ The parameter value is set by the SETUP routine.

⊗ This parameter cannot be written when the frequency inverter is in operation.

I_{FIN}, U_{FIN}, P_{FIN}: rated values of the frequency inverter, o: overload capacity of frequency inverter

21.1 Actual Value Menu (VAL)

Actual Values of the Machine

No.	Description	Unit	Display range	Chapter
210	Stator Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	18.2
211	R.m.s Current	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	18.2
212	Output Voltage	V	0.0 ... U_{FIN}	18.2
213	Active Power	kW	0.0 ... P_{max}	18.2
214	Active Current	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	18.2
215	Isd	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	18.2
216	Isq	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	18.2
217	Encoder 1 Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	9.4
218	Encoder 1 Speed	1/min	0 ... 60000	9.4
221	Slip Frequency	Hz	0.0 ... 999.99	18.2
	Actual Values of the Frequency Inverter			
222	DC link voltage	V	0.0 ... U_{dmax}-25	18.1
223	Modulation	%	0 ... 100	18.1
	Actual Values of the Machine			
224	Torque	Nm	± 9999.9	18.2
225	Rotor Flux	%	0 ... 100	18.2
226	Winding Temperature	deg.C	0 ... 999	17.7.2
227	Act. Rotor Time Constant	ms	0 ... τ_{max}	18.2
	Actual Values of the Frequency Inverter			
228	Internal Reference Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... f_{max}	18.1
229	Reference Percentage Value	%	± 300.00	18.1
230	Actual Percentage Value	%	± 300.00	18.1
	Actual value memory			
231	Peak Value Long Term Ixt	%	0.00 ... 100.00	18.3
232	Peak Value Short Term Ixt	%	0.00 ... 100.00	18.3
	Actual Values of the Machine			
235	Flux-Forming Voltage	V	0.0 ... U_{FIN}	18.2
236	Torque-Forming Voltage	V	0.0 ... U_{FIN}	18.2
238	Flux Value	%	0.0 ... 100.0	18.2
239	Reactive Current	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	18.2
240	Actual Speed	1/min	0 ... 60000	18.2
241	Actual Frequency	Hz	0.0 ... 999.99	18.2
	Actual Values of the System			
242	Actual Value System	Hz	0.0 ... 999.99	18.4.1

Actual Values of the Frequency Inverter

No.	Description	Unit	Display range	Chapter
244	Working Hours Counter	h	99999	18.1
245	Operation Hours Counter	h	99999	18.1
249	Active Data Set	-	1 ... 4	14.4.7
250	Digital Inputs	-	00 ... 255	20.2
251	Analog Input MFI1A	%	± 100.00	14.1.1
252	Repetition frequency input	Hz	0.0 ... 999.99	13.11
254	Digital Outputs	-	00 ... 255	20.2
255	Heat Sink Temperature	deg.C	0 ... T_{kmax}	18.1
256	Inside Temperature	deg.C	0 ... T_{imax}	18.1
257	Analog Output MFO1A	V	0.0 ... 24.0	14.2.1
259	Current Error	-	FXXXX	18.1
269	Warnings	-	AXXXX	18.1
275	Controller Status	-	CXXXX	18.1
278	Frequency MFO1F	Hz	0.00 ... f_{max}	14.2.2
	Actual Values of the System			
285	Volumetric Flow	m3/h	0 ... 99999	18.4.2
286	Pressure	kPa	0.0 ... 999.9	18.4.2
	Actual value memory			
287	Peak Value Vdc	V	0.0 ... U_{dmax}	18.3
288	Average Value Vdc	V	0.0 ... U_{dmax}	18.3
289	Peak Value Heat Sink Temp.	deg.C	0 ... T_{kmax}	18.3
290	Average Value Heat Sink Temp.	deg.C	0 ... T_{kmax}	18.3
291	Peak Value Inside Temperature	deg.C	0 ... T_{imax}	18.3
292	Average Value Inside Temperature	deg.C	0 ... T_{imax}	18.3
293	Peak value Irms	A	0.0 ... $o \cdot I_{FIN}$	18.3
294	Average value Irms	A	0.0 ... $o \cdot I_{FIN}$	18.3
295	Peak Value Active Power pos.	kW	0.0 ... $o \cdot P_{FIN}$	18.3
296	Peak Value Active Power neg.	kW	0.0 ... $o \cdot P_{FIN}$	18.3
297	Average Value Active Power	kW	0.0 ... $o \cdot P_{FIN}$	18.3
301	Energy, positive	kWh	0 ... 99999	18.3
302	Energy, negative	kWh	0 ... 99999	18.3
	Error List			
310	Last Error	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
311	Last Error but one	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
312	Error 3	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
313	Error 4	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
314	Error 5	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
315	Error 6	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
316	Error 7	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
317	Error 8	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
318	Error 9	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
319	Error 10	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
320	Error 11	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
321	Error 12	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
322	Error 13	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
323	Error 14	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
324	Error 15	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1
325	Error 16	h:m; F	00000:00; FXXXX	19.1

	Error Environment			
No.	**Description**	**Unit**	**Display range**	**Chapter**
330	DC link voltage	V	0.0 ... U_{dmax}	19.2
331	output voltage	V	0.0 ... U_{FIN}	19.2
332	Stator Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	19.2
333	Encoder 1 Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	19.2
335	Phase Current Ia	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	19.2
336	Phase Current Ib	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	19.2
337	Phase Current Ic	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	19.2
338	R.m.s Current	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	19.2
339	Isd / Reactive Current	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	19.2
340	Isq / Active Current	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	19.2
341	Rotor Magnetizing Current	A	0.0 ... I_{max}	19.2
342	Torque	Nm	± 9999.9	19.2
343	Analog Input MFI1A	%	± 100.00	19.2
346	Analog Output MFO1A	V	0.0 ... 24.0	19.2
349	Repetition Frequency Output	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	19.2
350	Status of Digital Inputs	-	00 ... 255	20.2
351	Status of Digital Outputs	-	00 ... 255	20.2
352	Time since Release	h:m:s.ms	00000:00:00.000	19.2
353	Heat Sink Temperature	deg.C	0 ... T_{kmax}	19.2
354	Inside Temperature	deg.C	0 ... T_{imax}	19.2
355	Controller Status	-	C0000 ... CFFFF	20.3
356	Warning Status	-	A0000 ... AFFFF	20.4
357	Int Value 1	-	± 32768	19.2
358	Int Value 2	-	± 32768	19.2
359	Long Value 1	-	± 2147483647	19.2
360	Long Value 2	-	± 2147483647	19.2
361	Checksum	-	OK / NOK	19.2
	Error List			
362	No. of Errors	-	0 ... 32767	19.1
363	No. of self acknowledged Errors	-	0 ... 32767	19.1
	Positioning			
470	Rotations	U	0.000 ... $1 \cdot 10^6$	11.6
	Digital Outputs			
537	Actual Warning Mask	-	AXXXXXXXX	14.3.7
	Self-configuration			
797	SETUP Status	-	OK / NOK	7.5

21.2 Parameter Menu (PARA)

	Inverter Data			
No.	**Description**	**Unit**	**Setting range**	**Chapter**
0	Serial Number	-	Characters	8.1
1	Optional Modules	-	Characters	8.2
12	Inverter Software Version	-	Characters	8.3
27	Set Password	-	0 ... 999	8.4
28	Control Level	-	1 ... 3	8.5
29	User Name	-	32 characters	8.6
⊗ 30	Configuration	-	Selection	8.7
33	Language	-	Selection	8.8
⊗ 34	Program(ming)	-	0 ... 9999	8.9
37	Start Positioning of Axle	-	Selection	11.6.2
	Fan			
39	Switch-On Temperature	deg.C	0 ... 60	17.2
	Digital Inputs			
62	Frequency Motorpoti Up	-	Selection	14.4.9
63	Frequency Motorpot. Down	-	Selection	14.4.9
66	Fixed Frequency Change-Over 1	-	Selection	14.4.8
67	Fixed Frequency Change-Over 2	-	Selection	14.4.8
68	Start Clockwise	-	Selection	14.4.1
69	Start Anticlockwise	-	Selection	14.4.1
70	Data set change-over 1	-	Selection	14.4.7
71	Data set change-over 2	-	Selection	14.4.7
72	Percent Motorpoti Up	-	Selection	14.4.9
73	Percent Motorpoti Down	-	Selection	14.4.9
75	Fixed percentage value change-over 1	-	Selection	14.4.8
76	Fixed percentage value change-over 2	-	Selection	14.4.8
83	Timer 1	-	Selection	14.4.4
84	Timer 2	-	Selection	14.4.4
87	Start 3-wire-control	-	Selection	14.4.2
103	Error Acknowledgment	-	Selection	14.4.3
164	n-/M-Control Change-Over	-	Selection	14.4.6
	Logic Modules			
198	Operation mode Logic 1	-	Selection	14.5.3
199	Input 1 Logic 1	-	Selection	14.5.3
200	Input 2 Logic 1	-	Selection	14.5.3
201	Operation mode Logic 2	-	Selection	14.5.3
202	Input 1 Logic 2	-	Selection	14.5.3
203	Input 2 Logic 2	-	Selection	14.5.3
	Digital Inputs			
204	Therm. Contact	-	Selection	14.4.5
	Logic Modules			
205	Operation mode Logic 3	-	Selection	14.5.3
206	Input 1 Logic 3	-	Selection	14.5.3
207	Input 2 Logic 3	-	Selection	14.5.3
	Actual value memory			
237	Reset Memory	-	Selection	18.3

		No.	Description	Unit	Setting range	Chapter
			Controlled commissioning			
		369	Motor Type	-	Selection	7.2.3
			Rated Motor Parameters			
	▤	370	Rated Voltage	V	$0.17 \cdot U_{FIN}$ ... $2 \cdot U_{FIN}$	9.1
	▤	371	Rated Current	A	$0.01 \cdot I_{FIN}$ ... $10 \cdot o \cdot I_{FIN}$	9.1
	▤	372	Rated Speed	U/min	96 ... 60000	9.1
☑	▤	373	No. of Pole Pairs	-	1 ... 24	9.1
	▤	374	Rated Cosinus Phi	-	0.01 ... 1.00	9.1
	▤	375	Rated Frequency	Hz	10.00 ... 1000.00	9.1
	▤	376	Rated Mech. Power	kW	$0.1 \cdot P_{FIN}$ ... $10 \cdot P_{FIN}$	9.1
			Further motor parameters			
☑	▤	377	Stator Resistance	mOhm	0 ... 65535	9.2
☑	▤	378	Leakage Coeff.	%	1.0 ... 20.0	9.2
			System data			
		389	Factor Actual Value System	-	-100.000 ... 100.000	10.1
	▤	397	Nominal Volumetric Flow	m3/h	1 ... 99999	10.2
	▤	398	Nominal Pressure	kPa	0.1 ... 999.9	10.2
			Pulse Width Modulation			
		400	Switching frequency	-	Selection	17.1
		401	Min. Switching Frequency	-	Selection	17.1
			Error/warning behavior			
		405	Warning Limit Short Term Ixt	%	6 ... 100	12.1
		406	Warning Limit Long Term Ixt	%	6 ... 100	12.1
		407	Warning Limit Heat Sink Temp.	deg.C	-25 ... 0	12.2
		408	Warning Limit Inside Temp.	deg.C	-25 ... 0	12.2
		409	Controller-Status Message	-	Selection	12.3
			Bus controller			
	▤	412	Local/Remote	-	Selection	17.3
			Error/warning behavior			
		415	IDC Compensation Limit	V	0.0 ... 1.5	12.4
		417	Frequency Switch-Off Limit	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	12.5
			Frequency Limits			
☑	▤	418	Minimum Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	13.1
☑	▤	419	Maximum Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	13.1
			Frequency ramps			
	▤	420	Acceleration (Clockwise)	Hz/s	0.00 ... 9999.99	13.7
	▤	421	Deceleration (Clockwise)	Hz/s	0.01 ... 9999.99	13.7
	▤	422	Acceleration Anticlockwise	Hz/s	-0.01 ... 9999.99	13.7
	▤	423	Deceleration Anticlockwise	Hz/s	-0.01 ... 9999.99	13.7
	▤	424	Emergency Stop Clockwise	Hz/s	0.01 ... 9999.99	13.7
	▤	425	Emergency Stop Anticlockwise	Hz/s	0.01 ... 9999.99	13.7
	▤	426	Maximum Leading	Hz	0.01 ... 999.99	13.7
	▤	430	Ramp Rise Time Clockwise	ms	0 ... 65000	13.7
	▤	431	Ramp Fall Time Clockwise	ms	0 ... 65000	13.7
	▤	432	Ramp Rise Time Anticlockwise	ms	0 ... 65000	13.7
	▤	433	Ramp Rise Time Anticlockwise	ms	0 ... 65000	13.7

	No.	Description	Unit	Setting range	Chapter
		Technology Controller			
▤	440	Operation mode	-	Selection	16.3
▤	441	Fixed Frequency	Hz	-999.99 ... 999.99	16.3
▤	442	max. P-Component	Hz	0.01 ... 999.99	16.3
▤	443	Hysteresis	%	0.01 ... 100.00	16.3
▤	444	Amplification	-	-15.00 ... 15.00	16.3
▤	445	Integral Time	ms	0 ... 32767	16.3
▤	446	Ind. Volume Flow Control Factor	-	0.10 ... 2.00	16.3
		Block Frequencies			
▤	447	1st Blocking Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	13.9
▤	448	2nd Blocking Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	13.9
▤	449	Frequency Hysteresis	Hz	0.00 ... 100.00	13.9
		Multifunctional input 1			
▤	450	Tolerance Band	%	0.00 ... 25.00	14.1.1.3
	451	Filter Time Constant	ms	Selection	14.1.1.4
	452	Operation mode	-	Selection	14.1
	453	Error/Warning Behavior	-	Selection	14.1.1.5
▤	454	Point X1	%	0.00 ... 100.00	14.1.1.1
▤	455	Point Y1	%	-100.00 ... 100.00	14.1.1.1
▤	456	Point X2	%	0.00 ... 100.00	14.1.1.1
▤	457	Point Y2	%	-100.00 ... 100.00	14.1.1.1
		Positioning			
▤	458	Operation mode	-	Selection	11.6
	459	Signal Source	-	Selection	11.6.1
▤	460	Positioning Distance	U	0.000 ... 1 10^6	11.6.1
▤	461	Signal Correction	ms	-327.68 ... 327.67	11.6.1
▤	462	Load Correction	-	-32768 ... 32767	11.6.1
▤	463	Activity after Positioning	-	Selection	11.6.1
▤	464	Waiting Time	ms	0 ... 3.6 10^6	11.6.1
		Temperature Adjustment			
▤	465	Operation mode	-	Selection	17.7.2
▤	466	Temperature Coefficient	%/100	0.00 ... 300.00	17.7.2
▤	467	Adjusting Temperature	deg.C	-50.0 ... 300.0	17.7.2
		Positioning			
▤	469	Reference Orientation	°	0.0 ... 359.9	11.6.2
▤	471	Positioning Frequency	Hz	1.00 ... 50.00	11.6.2
▤	472	Max positional error	°	0.1 ... 90.0	11.6.2
		Motor Potentiometer			
	473	Ramp Keypad-Motorpoti	Hz/s	0.01 ... 999.99	13.10
	474	Operation mode	-	Selection	13.10
		Frequency Reference Channel			
▤	475	Reference Frequency Source	-	Selection	13.4
		Reference percentage channel			
▤	476	Reference Percentage Source	-	Selection	13.5
		Percentage ramp			
▤	477	Gradient Percentage Ramp	%/s	0 ... 60000	13.8
		Technology Controller			
▤	478	Actual Percentage source	-	Selection	16.3
		Positioning			
▤	479	time constant positioning controller	ms	1.00 ... 9999.99	11.6.2

	No.	Description	Unit	Setting range	Chapter
		Fixed Frequencies			
▤	480	Fixed Frequency 1	Hz	-999.99 ... 999.99	13.6.1
▤	481	Fixed Frequency 2	Hz	-999.99 ... 999.99	13.6.1
▤	482	Fixed Frequency 3	Hz	-999.99 ... 999.99	13.6.1
▤	483	Fixed Frequency 4	Hz	-999.99 ... 999.99	13.6.1
	489	JOG-Frequency	Hz	-999.99 ... 999.99	13.6.2
		Speed Sensor 1			
⊗	490	Operation mode	-	Selection	9.4.1
⊗	491	Division marks	-	1 ... 8192	9.4.2
		Repetition frequency input			
⊗	496	Operation mode	-	Selection	13.11
⊗	497	Divider	-	1 ... 8192	13.11
		Logic Modules			
	503	Operation mode Logic 4	-	Selection	14.5.3
	504	Input 1 Logic 4	-	Selection	14.5.3
	505	Input 2 Logic 4	-	Selection	14.5.3
		Brake Chopper			
	506	Trigger Threshold	V	U_{dmin}+25 ... 1000.0	17.4
		Motor Chopper			
▤	507	Trigger Threshold	V	U_{dmin}+25 ... 1000.0	17.7.1
		Digital Outputs			
▤	510	Setting Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	14.3.1
		Percentage Value Limits			
▤	518	Minimum Reference Percentage	%	0.00 ... 300.00	13.3
▤	519	Maximum Reference Percentage	%	0.00 ... 300.00	13.3
		Fixed Percentages			
▤	520	Fixed Percentage 1	%	-300.00 ... 300.00	13.6.3
▤	521	Fixed Percentage 2	%	-300.00 ... 300.00	13.6.3
▤	522	Fixed Percentage 3	%	-300.00 ... 300.00	13.6.3
▤	523	Fixed Percentage 4	%	-300.00 ... 300.00	13.6.3
		Digital Outputs			
	530	Op. Mode Digital Output 1	-	Selection	14.3
	532	Op. Mode Digital Output 3	-	Selection	14.3
	536	Create Warning Mask	-	Selection	14.3.7
	540	Op. Mode Comparator 1	-	Selection	14.5.2
	541	Comparator On above	%	-300.00 ... 300.00	14.5.2
	542	Comparator Off below	%	-300.00 ... 300.00	14.5.2
	543	Op. Mode Comparator 2	-	Selection	14.5.2
	544	Comparator On above	%	-300.00 ... 300.00	14.5.2
	545	Comparator Off below	%	-300.00 ... 300.00	14.5.2
	549	Max. Control Deviation	%	0.01 ... 20.00	14.3.2
		Multifunctional output 1			
	550	Operation mode	-	Selection	14.2
	551	Voltage 100%	V	0.0 ... 24.0	14.2.1.1
	552	Voltage 0%	V	0.0 ... 24.0	14.2.1.1
	553	Analog Operation	-	Selection	14.2.1
	554	Digital Operation	-	Selection	14.3
▤	555	Repetition Freq. Operation	-	Selection	14.2.2
⊗	556	Division marks	-	30 ... 8192	14.2.2.1
		Error/warning behavior			
	570	Motor Temp. Operation Mode	-	Selection	12.6

		No.	Description	Unit	Setting range	Chapter
			Motor Circuit Breaker			
	▤	571	Operation mode	-	Selection	14.2.2
	▤	572	Frequency Limit	%	0 ... 300	14.2.2.1
			Intelligent current limits			
	▤	573	Operation mode	-	Selection	16.1
	▤	574	Power Limit	%	40.00 ... 95.00	16.1
	▤	575	Limitation Time	min	5 ... 300	16.1
			Error/warning behavior			
	▤	576	Phase Supervision	-	Selection	12.7
		578	Allowed No. of Auto-Acknowl.	-	0 ... 20	12.7
		579	Restart Delay	ms	0 ... 1000	12.8
			Pulse Width Modulation			
		580	Reduction Limit Heat Sink Temp.	deg.C	-25 ... 0	17.1
			V-belt Monitoring			
	▤	581	Operation mode	-	Selection	17.6
	▤	582	Trigger Limit Iactive	%	0.1 ... 100.0	17.6
	▤	583	Delay Time	s	0.1 ... 600.0	17.6
			V/f characteristic			
☑	▤	600	Starting Voltage	V	0.0 ... 100.0	15
☑	▤	601	Voltage Rise	%	-100 ... 200	15
☑	▤	602	Rise Frequency	%	0 ... 100	15
☑	▤	603	Cut-Off Voltage	V	60.0 ... 560.0	15
☑	▤	604	Cut-Off Frequency	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	15
	▤	605	Dyn. Voltage Pre-Control	%	0 ... 200	15.1
			Current limit value controller			
	▤	610	Operation mode	-	Selection	16.4.2
	▤	611	Amplification	-	0.01 ... 30.00	16.4.2
	▤	612	Integral Time	ms	1 10000	16.4.2
	▤	613	Current Limit	A	0.0 ... o · I_{FIN}	16.4.2
☑	▤	614	Frequency Limit	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	16.4.2
			Starting Behavior			
☑	▤	620	Operation mode	-	Selection	11.1.1
	▤	621	Amplification	-	0.01 ... 10.00	11.1.1
	▤	622	Integral Time	ms	1 ... 30000	11.1.1
☑	▤	623	Starting Current	A	0.0 ... o · I_{FIN}	11.1.1.1
☑	▤	624	Frequency Limit	Hz	0.00 ... 100.00	11.1.1.2
			Stopping Behavior			
	▤	630	Operation mode	-	Selection	11.2
			Direct current brake			
☑	▤	631	Braking Current	A	0.00 ... $\sqrt{2} \cdot I_{FIN}$	11.3
	▤	632	Braking Time	s	0.0 ... 200.0	11.3
☑	▤	633	Demagnetizing Time	s	0.1 ... 30.0	11.3
	▤	634	Amplification	-	0.00 ... 10.00	11.3
	▤	635	Integral Time	ms	0 ... 1000	11.3
			Stopping Behavior			
	▤	637	Switch-Off Threshold	%	0.0 ... 100.0	11.2.1
	▤	638	Holding Time	s	0.0 ... 200.0	11.2.2

		No.	Description	Unit	Setting range	Chapter
			Search Run			
	▤	645	Operation mode	-	Selection	11.5
	▤	646	Brak. Time after Search Run	s	0.0 ... 200.0	11.5
	▤	647	Current / Rated Motor Current	%	1.00 ... 100.00	11.5
	▤	648	Amplification	-	0.00 ... 10.00	11.5
	▤	649	Integral Time	ms	0 ... 1000	11.5
			Auto Start			
		651	Operation mode	-	Selection	11.4
			Slip compensation			
☑	▤	660	Operation mode	-	Selection	16.4.1
	▤	661	Amplification	%	0.0 ... 300.0	16.4.1
	▤	662	Max. Slip Ramp	Hz/s	0.01 ... 650.00	16.4.1
	▤	663	Minimum Frequency	Hz	0.01 ... 999.99	16.4.1
			Voltage controller			
	▤	670	Operation mode	-	Selection	16.2
		671	Mains Failure Threshold	V	-200.0 ... –50.0	16.2
		672	Reference Mains Support Value	V	-200.0 ... –10.0	16.2
	▤	673	Mains Support Deceleration	Hz/s	0.01 ... 9999.99	16.2
	▤	674	Acceleration on Mains Resumption	Hz/s	0.00 ... 9999.99	16.2
	▤	675	Shutdown Threshold	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	16.2
		676	Reference Shutdown Value	V	U_{dmin}+25 ... U_{dmax}-25	16.2
	▤	677	Amplification	-	0.00 ... 30.00	16.2
	▤	678	Integral Time	ms	0 ... 10000	16.2
		680	Reference DC-Link Limitation	V	U_{dmin}+25 ... U_{dmax}-25	16.2
		681	Max. Frequency Rise	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	16.2
	▤	683	Gen. Ref. Current Limit	A	0.0 ... o · I_{FIN}	16.2
			Current Controller			
☑	▤	700	Amplification	-	0.00 ... 2.00	16.5.1
☑	▤	701	Integral Time	ms	0.00 ... 10.00	16.5.1
			Further motor parameters			
☑	▤	713	Magnetizing Current 50% Flux	%	1 ... 50	9.2.3
☑	▤	714	Magnetizing Current 80% Flux	%	1 ... 80	9.2.3
☑	▤	715	Magnetizing Current 110% Flux	%	110 ... 197	9.2.3
☑	▤	716	Rated Magnetizing Current	A	0.01·I_{FIN} ... o·I_{FIN}	9.2.3
			Field Controller			
☑	▤	717	Reference Flux	%	0.01 ... 300.00	16.5.5
			Further motor parameters			
☑	▤	718	Rated Slip Correction Factor	%	0.01 ... 300.00	9.2.4
			Frequency Limits			
	▤	719	Slip Frequency	%	0 ... 10000	13.1
			Speed controller			
	▤	720	Operation mode	-	Selection	16.5.3
☑	▤	721	Amplification 1	-	0.00 ... 200.00	16.5.3
	▤	722	Integral Time 1	ms	0 ... 60000	16.5.3
☑	▤	723	Amplification 2	-	0.00 ... 200.00	16.5.3
	▤	724	Integral Time 2	ms	0 ... 60000	16.5.3
			Acceleration Pre-Control			
	▤	725	Operation mode	-	Selection	16.5.4
	▤	726	Minimum Acceleration	Hz/s	0.1 ... 6500.0	16.5.4
	▤	727	Mech. Time Constant	ms	1 ... 60000	16.5.4

			Speed controller			
		No.	**Description**	**Unit**	**Setting range**	**Chapter**
	▤	728	Current Limit	A	0.0 ... o · I_{FIN}	16.5.3.1
	▤	729	Current Limit Generator Operation	A	-0.1 ... o · I_{FIN}	16.5.3.1
	▤	730	Torque Limit	%	0.00 ... 650.00	16.5.3.1
	▤	731	Torque Limit Generator Operation	%	0.00 ... 650.00	16.5.3.1
	▤	732	P-Comp. Torque Upper Limit	%	0.00 ... 650.00	16.5.3.1
	▤	733	P-Comp. Torque Lower Limit	%	0.00 ... 650.00	16.5.3.1
			Speed controller			
	▤	734	Isq Limit Source Motor Operation	-	Selection	16.5.3.2
	▤	735	Isq Limit Source Generator Op.	-	Selection	16.5.3.2
	▤	736	Torque Limit Source Motor Op.	-	Selection	16.5.3.2
	▤	737	Torque Limit Source Gen. Op.	-	Selection	16.5.3.2
☑	▤	738	Speed Control Switch-Over Limit	Hz	0.00 ... 999.99	16.5.3
	▤	739	Power Limit	kW	0.00 ... 2·o·P_{FIN}	16.5.3.1
	▤	740	Power Limit Generator Operation	kW	0.00 ... 2·o·P_{FIN}	16.5.3.1
			Field Controller			
	▤	741	Amplification	-	0.0 ... 100.0	16.5.5
☑	▤	742	Integral Time	ms	0.0 ... 1000.0	16.5.5
☑	▤	743	Ref. Isd Upper Limit	A	0.1·I_{FIN} ... o·I_{FIN}	16.5.5.1
☑	▤	744	Ref. Isd Lower Limit	A	-I_{FIN} ... I_{FIN}	16.5.5.1
			Speed controller			
		748	Backlash Damping	%	0 ... 300	16.5.3
			Modulation Controller			
	▤	750	Reference Modulation	%	3.00 ... 105.00	16.5.6
	▤	752	Integral Time	ms	0.0 ... 1000.00	16.5.6
	▤	753	Operation mode	-	Selection	16.5.6
	▤	755	Reference Imr Lower Limit	A	0.01·I_{FIN} ... o·I_{FIN}	16.5.6.1
	▤	756	Control Deviation Limitation	%	0.00 ... 100.00	16.5.6.1
			Encoder Monitoring			
	▤	760	Operation mode	-	Selection	17.7.3
	▤	761	Timeout: Signal Fault	ms	0 ... 65000	17.7.3
	▤	762	Timeout: Channel fault	ms	0 ... 65000	17.7.3
	▤	763	Timeout: Direction fault	ms	0 ... 65000	17.7.3
			Torque Controller			
	▤	767	Frequency Upper Limit	Hz	-999.99 ... 999.99	16.5.2
	▤	768	Frequency Lower Limit	Hz	-999.99 ... 999.99	16.5.2
	▤	769	Frequency Upper Limit Source	-	Selection	16.5.2.1
	▤	770	Frequency Lower Limit Source	-	Selection	16.5.2.1
			Starting Behavior			
☑	▤	780	Max. Flux-Formation Time	ms	1 ... 10000	11.1.2
☑	▤	781	Current during Flux Formation	A	0.1·I_{FIN} ... o·I_{FIN}	11.1.2

Timer				
790	Operation Mode Timer 1	-	Selection	14.5.1
791	Time 1 Timer 1	s/m/h	0 ... 650.00	14.5.1
792	Time 2 Timer 1	s/m/h	0 ... 650.00	14.5.1
793	Operation Mode Timer 2	-	Selection	14.5.1
794	Time 1 Timer 2	s/m/h	0 ... 650.00	14.5.1
795	Time 2 Timer 2	s/m/h	0 ... 650.00	14.5.1
Self-configuration				
796	SETUP Select	-	Selection	7.5

Bonfiglioli

power, control and green solutions

Bonfiglioli has been designing and developing innovative and reliable power transmission and control solutions for industry, mobile machinery and renewable energy applications since 1956.

www.bonfiglioli.com

Bonfiglioli Riduttori S.p.A.
Via Giovanni XXIII, 7/A
40012 Lippo di Calderara di Reno
Bologna, Italy

tel: +39 051 647 3111
fax: +39 051 647 3126
bonfiglioli@bonfiglioli.com
www.bonfiglioli.com